Bi-2
5.3.4

A NEW ITALIAN GRAMMAR,

Which contains a True and Eaſy METHOD *for acquiring this* LANGUAGE.

With many uſeful REMARKS, which are not to be found in any other GRAMMAR of this Kind.

By FERD. ALTIERI,

AUTHOR of the *Italian* and *English* DICTIONARY, and PROFESSOR of the *Italian* TONGUE in *LONDON*.



VENICE.

Printed by JOHN BAPTIST PASQUALI.
MDCCXXXVI.
WITH PERMISSION & PRIVILEGE.

TO THE READER.

THE good Succeſs my Dictionary has met with in the World, encouraged me to compoſe a Grammar, that might ſupply the Deficiency of thoſe that have been printed before. Beſides, the preſſing Inſtances of my Friends have ſo far prevailed with me, as to make me undertake that laborious, though uſeful Work, but not without ſome Fear; knowing too well how apt the World is to Criticize upon Things of this Nature. However, as I have omitted nothing, that might contribute to render this my Grammar uſeful to Learners, I would deſire the kind Reader to peruſe it firſt, and then ſpeak in praiſe or diſpraiſe of it, according to its Deſerts. *Toriano* has given us a Grammar, which falls very short of being ſo compleat as it ought to be; ſince the Syntax, which is the principal Part of a Grammar, is not extenſive enough in explaining the Uſe of Particles; nor the Reference the Tenſes of *Italian* Verbs have with the *English*; which makes one of the greateſt Difficulties of the *Italian*

Language; but he contented himſelf with laying down a few Rules, very uſeful indeed, but not ſufficient to learn the *Italian* without the Aſſiſtance of a good Maſter. By what I have ſaid againſt *Toriano's* Grammar, I don't mean to depreciate his Capacity; for I don't queſtion but he might have given us a better if he had pleaſed; but only to ſhew, that I would have never attempted to compoſe a new one, had I not thought it uſeful, and neceſſary, and yet without incroaching upon another Man's Labour. As for *Veneroni's*, I have nothing to object, but this; that as he compoſed his Grammar for the *French*, by conſequence, the Rules are adapted only to the *French* Idiom; whereas had he compoſed one for the *Engliſh*, he would have laid down other Rules conformable to the *Engliſh* Idiom. Now, can any one think that ſuch a Grammar, though perfect in it ſelf, could ever be of any ſervice to an *Engliſhman*, who is to learn *Italian*, not by the *French*, but by the *Engliſh?* Don't we know the wide Difference between the *French* and *Engliſh* Languages, in regard to their Idioms? And yet the Translator, (for he is nothing elſe,) has ſo long impoſed upon the Publick, by giving out a Grammar, which the Author never deſigned for the *Engliſh*. You will ſee in this my Grammar the Uſe of the *Italian* Particles ſo clearly explained, that without the leaſt Trouble, you

will

will underſtand how to uſe them, though they ſeem to cauſe the greateſt Difficulty of the *Italian* Tongue. The Uſe of Tenſes is alſo explained in a particular, eaſy, (and I may ſay) new Manner, with other Remarks upon that Subject, uſeful to be learned. And ſince the *English* Tongue is now ſo much recommended and deſired abroad, eſpecially in the Sea-port Towns in *Italy*, I have thought fit to add an *English* Grammar to the *Italian*; and for that I have choſen the beſt *English* Grammars, concerning the Pronunciation of Letters, explaining their different Sounds, by others adapted to the *Italian* Pronunciation; omitting nothing that might be uſeful and advantagious: Aſſuring the kind Reader, that the whole has been performed with Zeal for his Improvement, and with no other View, but to ſerve the *English* Nation in general.

THE

THE CONTENTS.

CHAP. I. OF the Pronunciation page. 1
SECT. I. Of ſimple Sounds, and Letters in general 2
SECT. II. Of the Diviſion of Letters 2
SECT. III. Of the Combination of Sounds and Letters 3
SECT. IV. Of the Pronunciation of Letters 4
SECT. V. Of the Incompatibility of Letters 20
Of the Accent
Of the Apoſtrophe, or Eliſion
SECT. VI. Of the Syllables that ought to be pronounced short or long in the Nouns 28
Of the Syllabes that ought to be pronounced short or long in Verbs 32
SECT. VII. Of Points or Stops 34
Of Analogy 35
CHAP. II. Of the Article 36
CHAP. III. Of the Noun 39
SECT. I. Of the Gender 40
Of the Augmentatives 47
Of the Diminutives 49
Of the Adjectives 50
SECT. II. Of the Number 50
SECT. III. Of the Caſe or Declenſion 52

SECT.

SECT. IV. Of the Comparison of Adjectives 60
SECT. V. Of the Figure and Species of Nouns 61
CHAP. IV. Of the Pronouns 63
SECT. I. Of the Pronouns Personal 65
SECT. II. Of the Pronouns Possessive 73
SECT. III. Of the Pronouns Demonstrative 79
SECT. IV. Of the Pronouns Relative 84
SECT. V. Of the Pronouns Interrogative 86
SECT. VI. Of the Pronouns Numeral 87
SECT. VII. Of the Pronouns Indefinite 87
CHAP. V. Of Verbs 94
SECT. I. Of the Gender 95
SECT. II. Of the Moods 96
SECT. III. Of the Tenses 98
SECT. IV. Of the Persons 102
SECT. V. Of the Numbers 102
SECT. VI. Of Conjugation 102
— General Rules for the Terminat. of Verbs 103
— The Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, *avere*, to have 111
—— Verb, *essere*, to be 115
— Observations upon the Auxiliary Verbs 120
— Variations of the Auxiliary Verb, *avere*, to have; which are used only in Poetry 122
—— Of the Verb *essere*, to be 123
— The three Conjugations of regular Active verbs 124
— Of the Conjugation of Passive Verbs 127
— The Conjugation of reflected and reciprocal Verbs 141

Of

— Of Verbs Irregular 145
— Of Verbs Impersonal 211
— Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb *essere*, to be, with the Adverbs *ci*, and *vi*. 215
CHAP. VI. Of Participles 217
CHAP. VII. Of Adverbs 221
CHAP. VIII. Of Prepositions 235
CHAP. IX. Of Conjunctions 239
CHAP. X. Of Interjections 243
CHAP. XI. Of the Syntax 245
ART. I. Of the Construction of Articles 245
ART. II. Of the Construction of Nouns Substantive 255
Of Adjectives 256
Of the Comparison 261
ART. III. Of the Use of Pronouns. 263
— Personal Pronouns 263
— Possessive 269
— Demonstrative 270
— Relative 271
— Interrogative 274
— Indefinite 275
CHAP. XII. Of Verbs 277
— Of the Use of Moods 277
— Of the Use of Tenses 284
— Of the Regimen of Verbs 286
CHAP. XIII. Of the Construction of Participles 291
CHAP. XIV. Of the Use of Prepositions 295

A NEW

5.8.4
Bk 2 t — 321

A NEW

Italian Grammar.

CHAP. I.

Of the Pronunciation.

IT is almoſt as impoſſible for an Author to expreſs the true Pronunciation of Words in writing, as it is impoſſible for a Painter to repreſent a Sound by Colours. The beſt Rule I would eſtablish to pronounce the Languages well, would be to learn them from the Mouth of thoſe who pronounce them the beſt.

However, to conform myſelf to the uſual way of Grammarians, I will endeavour to give ſome Rules as clear as poſſible: For what would the Publick ſay, if before I teach them to ſpeak, I did not teach them how to pronounce? The Order that I ſhall follow will be to examine each Letter, one after the other, by explaining the Qualities, the Nature, and the Proprieties of them; upon what Occaſions they are incompa-

a tible

tible among themſelves, and when the one is changed for the other. In ſhort, I ſhall ſay, upon this Subject, what I have learned, either by frequenting with thoſe who pronounce the beſt, or by reading the beſt Authors; which will be uſeful, not only for the Pronunciation, but alſo for the Orthography, and for to know the Beauty of our Poetry.

SECT. I.

Of ſimple Sounds, and Letters in general.

The *Italians* have but twenty Letters, *viz.*
A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, Z.

SECT. II.

Of the Diviſion of Letters.

Letters are divided into Vowels and Conſonants.

The Vowels are,

A, E, I, O, U.

The Conſonants,

B, C, D, F, G, H, L, M, N, P, Q, R, S, T, Z.

The Vowels are thus called, becauſe they form a Voice or perfect Sound of themſelves, without the Help of another.

The reſt of the Letters are called Conſonants, that is, ſounding with another, becauſe they cannot

not make a Sound, or be pronounced without the help of another, either before or after; as *be*, *ce*, *em*, *en*.

As for *h*, it is neither Vowel nor Conſonant, but only a Mark of Aſpiration; as in theſe Words, *Ho*, *hanno*, *Hamo*.

In the *Italian* Language all the Letters are pronounced, and there is none but what is uſeful, except the *H*, as I have ſaid before, that is never ſounded; which makes Foreigners to have leſs Trouble to learn *Italian*, than the *Italians* to learn foreign Languages.

SECT. III.

Of the Combination of Sounds and Letters.

From ſome Letters ſingly pronounced, or joined with others, ariſe Syllables; one or more Syllables make Words; Words make Sentences; which laſt make up the whole Language or Speech.

A Syllable is the Sound of one or more Letters pronounced at one Time: As for Example, there are three Syllables in *A-mo-re*, Love; and four in *Giu-ra-men-to*, Oath.

A Word conſiſts of one, or more Syllables; as, *con*, with; *Tempo*, Time; *Amare*, to Love.

A Sentence or Phraſe is made up of ſeveral Words that make Senſe together; as, *La voſtra*

Compagnia m' è ſtata ſempre cara, your Company was always agreeable to me.

A Language or Speech is the Way of expreſſing our Thoughts, which may be done either by Word of Mouth, or in writing: Therefore, there are two chief Things required for that Purpoſe, *viz.* true Pronunciation, and Spelling.

SECT. IV.

Of the Pronunciation of Letters.

Of the Vowel A.

A in *Italian* ſounds like *A* in *Engliſh*, in theſe Words, *All*, *tall*, *War*; as, *Amore*; Love; *cantare*, to ſing; *parlare*, to ſpeak.

A ſometimes is pronounced with more ſtrength; as, *Andare*, to go; and ſometimes ſofter; as, *Amore*, love; and ſometimes we draw it long, as if there were two *aa*; as, *ah crudele*! ah cruel! perhaps 'tis the Effect of the Aſpiration that follows it. The Reaſon why they pronounce with more ſtrength the Vowel *a* in *andare*, than in *Amore*, is, becauſe in the firſt Word 'tis followed by two Conſonants, that always cauſe a longer Sound, than in the others; which makes me to eſtabliſh this general Rule, not only for the *a*, but alſo for the other Vowels; that they have always two Sounds, the one ſoft, when they are followed by a ſingle Conſonant; the other ſtronger when they are followed by two Conſonants;

nants; as *caro*, dear; *Carro*, a Cart; *Velo*, a Veil; *Vello*, Fleece; *vile*, vile; *Ville*, Countries; *colo*, I love with ardour; *Collo*, the Neck; *Bruto*, a Brute; *brutto*, ugly.

A is cut off in the Article, and the Pronoun *la*, before a Vowel, as in *l'Anima*.

A is ſometimes an Article of the Dative Caſe; as, *a me*, to me, *a noi*, to us; with an Apoſtrophe 'tis uſed inſtead of *ai*, *a' miei Amici*, to my Friends.

Feminine Nouns ending in *a* are never abridged, except the Words, *Hora*, *leggiera*, *ſuora*, inſtead of which one may ſay *Hor*, *leggier*, *ſuor*.

C.

The Letter C before the Vowels *e*, *i*, is pronounced like the *English ch*; as, *Centro*, *Cecità*, *Celebrare*, *Città*, read *Tchentro*, *Tchetchità*, *Tchelebrare*, *Tchittà*.

C before the Vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and before the *h*, is pronounced like our *k*; as, *Capo*, *Cavallo*, *Conto*, *Cuſtode*, read *Kapo*, *Kavallo*, *Konto*, *Kuſtode*.

If *c c* come before *h*, or before *a*, *o*, *u*, they are pronounced ſtrong; as *Specchi*, Looking-glaſſes, *Vacca*, a Cow, *ſtracco*, weary, *occupato*, employed.

C C beforo *e* or *i*, are pronounced like *tch*; as, *eccedere*, to exceed, *uccidere*, to kill.

Ch before *e* or *i*, is pronounced like *k*; as, *cheto*, *chino*, read *keto*, *kino*.

Note, that *ch* may have two different Sounds, the one ſtronger, the other ſofter. Their different Sounds may be learned by the following Rules.

Chi, which in *English* ſignifies who, with its Compounds, *chiunque*, whoſoever; *chi che ſi ſia*, whoſoever, is pronounced ſtrong.

All the Words which begin by the ſame Syllabre *chi*; as, *chirografo*, *Chirurgo*, *Chimera*, together with all the Words that have the Diphthong with *i* at the laſt Syllable, are pronounced ſoft; as, *vecchio*, old; *Occhio*, Eye; *Cocchio*, Coach.

But all the Words which don 't begin by *chi*, nor have the Diphthong with *i* at the laſt Syllable, generally are pronounced ſtronger; as, *Specchi*, Grotto 's, *Buchi*, Holes.

We have ſaid before that the Words having the Diphthong with *i* at the laſt Syllable have a ſoft Sound; but you muſt obſerve, that if the ſame Diphthong is preceeded by *ſ*, it ought to be pronounced ſtrong; as, *Maſchio*, *Muſchio*.

In the Syllables *cia*, *cio*, *ciu*. the *i* is ſounded ſlightly; as, *Braccia*, *laccio*, *ciurma*, read *Bratcha*, *latcho*, *churma*.

E.

The Letter *e* has two different Sounds, the one open like *ay* in dayly, the other cloſe like the *English* word Mellow. Tis in what conſiſts the

the greateſt Part of the Beauty of the *Italian* Pronunciation, which, however, can't be learned but by a long Uſe, notwithſtanding all the Rules that can be given for it.

E preceeded by *i*, forms with it a Diphthong, and it is pronounced open, in any Syllable whatſoever; as *Piè*, *Diè*, *Cieco*, *Chiedo*, *Miele*, *Sieguo*, *vieto*, *volontieri*, *bandiera*, *altiero*; alſo in all Nouns feminine of the ſame Termination; as *Guerriera*, *Luſinghiera*.

But in the Nouns maſculine, although ending in *iero*, the Diphthong is pronounced with a Sound leſs opened; and, becauſe the Nicety of this Pronunciation is hardly attained by Foreigners, the beſt Way for them is to pronounce it cloſe; *Cavaliero*, *Barbiero*, *Nocchiero*.

From this Rule muſt be excepted the *Latin* Nouns that have an *i*, which in *Italian* is changed in *e*. The Vowel *e* in theſe Words ought to be pronounced open, as *bieco*, *piego*, *Diego*, which come from the *Latin*, *obliquus*, *plico*, *Didacus*.

The Pronouns *miei*, *colei*, *lei*, *coſtei*, and all the firſt Perſons ſingular of the Optative of the Verbs *amerei*, *leggerei*, *udirei*, follow the ſame Rule.

The Imperfects, *facea*, *dicea*, *volea*, are pronounced with the *e* cloſe, becauſe the *ea* is not a true Diphthong, but a ſyncope of the Words *faceva*, *diceva*, *voleva*, wich retain the Pronunciation of their Primitives.

When the *e* is without Accent, and preceeded by a Comma, then it is a Conjunction, *io, e voi*, I, and you.

To avoid the Concurrence of two Vowels, they write *ed*, inſtead of *e; ed egli a me riſpoſe*, and he anſwered to me. *E* with the Accent, is the third Perſon ſingular of the Verb *eſſere*, to be; *ed è ben giuſto ch' io ſoffriſca, e peni*, and it is very juſt that I ſhould ſuffer.

With the Apoſtrophe, it is put inſtead of *egli*, he; *eglino*, they; *non ſapea chi e' foſſe*, or *chi e' foſſero*, I did not know who he was, or who they were.

They put ſometimes this *e'* with an Apoſtrophe, as a Particle expletive, *e' mi par di vederlo*, methinks I ſee him.

G.

This Letter has two Sounds; the one ſtrong, the other ſoft. Before the Vowels *a, o, u*, or before a Conſonant, it is pronounced as in *Engliſh*; as, *Gabbia*, a Cage; *Godo*, I enjoy; *Guſto*, Taſte; *Grido*, a Cry.

Before the Vowels *e*, and *i*, it is pronounced like *dg; Genero*, Son-in-law; *Ginocchio*, the Knee, read *Dgenero, Dginocchio*.

The *Tuſcans* to give to the *g* a ſtronger Pronunciation before the Vowels *e*, and *i*, as it is before *a, o, u*, put the *h* between; as, *Gherbino*,

bino, the ſouthweſt wind; *Ghirlanda*, a Garland.

Gg before *e*, or *i*, are pronounced like *dg*; as, *leggere*, to read; *oggi*, to day.

Gh has two Sounds, as we have ſaid of *ch*, that is to ſay, the Words which begin or end with a Diphthong with an *i* in it, have a ſofter Sound; as, *Ghiado*, Sword; *Ghiotto*, Glutton; *Unghia*, Nail. In other Words the *gh* is pronounced ſtrong; as, *Ghirlanda*, *Alberghi*, *Intrighi*.

The Letter *g* may be followed by the Letters *l*, *n*, *r*, in the ſame Syllable; as, *Gloria*, Glory; *Bagno*, Bath; *Grande*, Great. But it is to be obſerved, that the Letter *l*, preceeded by a *g*, and followed by an *i*, melts into another *l*; as, *Figlio*, a Son; *Giglio*, Lilly; read *Fillio*, *Gillio*; except *Negligenza*, *Negligente*, which have the ſame Pronunciation as in *English*.

In the Syllables *gia*, *gio*, *giu*, the *i* is not almoſt ſounded, and you muſt not lay a great Streſs upon the *g*; as, *Giardino*, a Garden; *Giorno*, a Day; *Giuſtizia*, Juſtice.

The Syllables *gna*, *gne*, *gni*, *gno*, *gnu*, are prononnced ſoft, almoſt like *nn*; as, *Campagna*, Country; *Caſtagne*, Cheſnuts; *ogni*, every; *Ingegno*, Wit; *ignudo*, naked.

The Syllables *gua*, *gue*, *gui*, are pronounced like *gwa*, *gwe*, *gwi*; as, *guaſtare*, to ſpoil; *Guerra*, War; *Guida*, a Guide.

H. Al-

H.

Although *h* is not properly a Letter, but only a Mark of Aſpiration, yet in our Language it is very uſeful; nay, in ſome Places very neceſſary, for to give a greater Force to the Letters, to avoid the Equivocation in ſome Words, and to give them a Senſe, which otherwiſe they would not have. In the firſt Caſe are *cheto*, ſtill; *chino*, bent; and ſeveral others.

As for the Equivoques, *hanno*, third Perſon plural of the Preſent of the Indicative Mood of the Verb *avere*, to have, ſignifies, they have; and *Anno* ſignifies a Year; *Ghiaccio*, Ice; *giaccio*, I lie down; *ho*, I have; *o*, or; *amo*, I love; *Hamo*, a fishing-hook; *vegghio*, I am awake; *veggio*, I ſee.

Io amai ſempre, ed amo forte ancora.
In tale ſtella preſi l' arco, e l' hamo.
Rompete il Ghiaccio, che pietà contende.
E volo ſopra il Cielo, e giaccio in terra.

In fine, the Words *occhio*, *vecchio*, and many others require the *h* to make Senſe; for if one did pronounce *occio*, *veccio*, theſe words would have no Signification.

Before *a*, *o*, *u*, the *h* has no Sound; and therefore is omitted.

I. The

I.

The Vowel *i* is pronounced in *English* like *ee*; as, *Libro*, a Book, read *Leebro*.

Note, That when *i* is between the Conſonants *c*, *g*, *gl*, *ſc*, and the Vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, it ſerves only to render the Pronunciation ſofter, and it is not expreſſed; as, *ciaſcheduno*, *giamai*, *gli*, *ſcioperato*, read *ſchaſcheduno*, *jamai*, *lli*, *shoperato*.

I, followed by another Vowel, for the moſt Part forms a Diphthong, therefore, to pronounce well theſe Vowels, you muſt make of them but one Syllable; as, *Piaga*, *Fiele*, *Fiore*. Sometimes the *i* is ſeparated from the Vowel, but very ſeldom; as *chiunque*, whoſoever, read *chi-unque*.

To avoid the Harſhneſs in the Pronunciation, we add the *i* to the Words that begin with an *s*, followed by another Conſonant, provided the Word that preceeds ends with a Conſonant; as, *per iſcherzo*, *per isdegno*, inſtead of *per ſcherzo*, *per sdegno*.

The *i* is often a Conſonant, when it is followed by a Vowel, and is pronounced like *y* in the Word *you*; as, *Abbajare*, to bark; *Ajuto*, Help.

The Vowel *i* by itſelf is the Maſculine Article of the plural Number; *I Libri*, the Books.

I', with an Apoſtrophe ſtands for *Io*; which is however peculiar to Poetry.

L.

The Letter *L* is pronounced the ſame as in *English; Legame*, *lontano*, *Lume*.

M. N.

Theſe two Letters are pronounced as in *English*: But it is to be obſerved, that the Syllables *im*, *in*, at the Beginning of a Word, followed by a Conſonant, muſt be pronounced ſo, that no Space of Time may be left between the Conſonants *m*, and *n*, and the following; for Example, in the Words *imbolare*, *impedire*, *incrudelire*, *indegno*, the firſt Syllables ought to be pronounced ſo quick, that the Sound of *im*, *in*, may not be expreſſed ſeparately from the following Conſonant, as the moſt Part of Foreigners do; who, in pronouncing the Word *impero*, *indegno*, ſound the Syllables *im*, *in*, as if they were followed by an *e*. The beſt Way to attain to the Nicety of this Pronunciation, is to learn it from the Mouth of a Maſter, who underſtands well the Language.

O.

The natural Sound of this Vowel commonly is cloſe, as that of the *e;* but there is a great many exceptions.

1. In all the Monoſyllables, the *o* is pronounced open; ex. *bo*, *pro*, *no*, *ciò*, with its Compounds, *acciò perciò*.

2. In all the firſt Perſons ſingular of the Futures of the Indicative Mood; as *amerò*, *leggerò*, *udirò*; but to give a more general Rule: *Note*, that the *ò* with an Accent at the End of a Word is always pronounced open.

3. In the Penultima, or laſt Syllable but one of the Words *Coro*, *ſonoro*, *canoro*, *ſodo*, *ſora;* and in ſeveral proper Names in *oro*, and *ora;* as *Polidoro*, *Flora*, *Leonora*.

4. In the Words derived from the *Latin*; as *dotto*, from *doctus; porto*, from *portus*. But the *o*, which is formed from a *Latin u*, is pronounced cloſe; as *Giovane*, from *Juvenis; Giogo*, from *Jugum; Giovare*, from *Juvare*.

This Letter may ſerve to form two Diphthongs, *io*, and *uo*; in both of which the *o* is pronounced open; as *Chioma*, *chiodo*, *Gioja*, *uſſignuolo*, *Cuore*, *Fuoco Stuolo*, &c. except *Fiore*, in which, notwithſtanding the Diphthong *io*, is pronounced cloſe.

The *o* derived from the *Latin* Diphthong *au*, is pro-

is pronounced open; as in the Words *Oro*, *Godo*, *Alloro*, *Toro*, which have been formed from the *Latin* Words *Aurum*, *Gaudeo*, *Laurus*, *Taurus*.

When the *i* is put between two Vowels, the Firſt of which is *o*, this *o* is pronounced open, as *Troja*, *Gioja*; except *Avoltojo*, a Vultur, *Ingojare*, to Swallow; *Raſojo*, a Razor; *Aſciugatojo*, a Towel.

The Poſition, or Antepoſition cauſes the *o* to be pronounced open, as we have ſaid of the *e*; as *Botta*, *Colgo*, *Donna*, *Atroce*, *Prole*, &c. *Sprone*, Spur; *Croce*, Croſs, are excepted, and the *o* is pronounced cloſe.

In the Words derived from the *Latin*, whereof an *u* has been changed into *o*, this *o* is always pronounced cloſe, notwithſtanding the Poſition; as *Colomba*, *Torre*, *Orſo*, from *Columba*, *Turris*, *Urſus*.

If the Poſition is formed by the Letter *n*, either double or ſingle, although the Words are not derived from the *Latin*, the *o* is pronounced alſo cloſe; as *biondo*, *gonna*, *ſonno*, *tronco*: Likewiſe if the Letter *n* is preceded by a *g*; as *Sogno*, Dream; *Biſogno*, Need; *Vergogna*, Shame.

Except *Bologna*, *Catalogna*, *Donna*, *Ponno*, where the *o* is pronounced open.

The *o* is alſo pronounced open in all the Words, whereof the Antepenultima, or the laſt Syllable but two is long; as *Fomite*, *opera*, *riſolvere*; except *Ordine*, in which the *o* is pronounced cloſe.

Note,

Note, that if the *o* derives from the *u Latin*, it ought to be pronounced always cloſe; as, *Folgore*, *Polvere*, *Porpora*, from *Fulgur*, *Pulvis*, *Purpura*.

In the third Perſons plural of the Preſent, and of the Perfect Tenſe of the Indicative Mood, the *o* is alſo pronounced cloſe? as *pongono*, they put; *corrono*, they run; *poſero*, they did put; *corſero*, they did run; with their Infinitives. In all other Words comprehended in none of the Rules which I have given; the *o* is always pronounced cloſe. However, I ſay, that thoſe who are not very much advanced in the *Italian* Tongue; or thoſe who do not aim at the perfect Knowledge of the Language; may diſpenſe themſelves to read the Rules given about the double Sound of the *e*, and of the *o*; becauſe they are ſo little ſenſible, that many *Italians* do not diſtinguish them.

P.

This Letter is pronounced the ſame as in *English*; and it is ſuppreſſed in ſome Words derived from the *Latin*, Where 'tis followed by an *ſ*; as in *Salmo*, *Salmodia*, *Salterio*; inſtead of *Pſalmo*, *Pſalmodia*, *Pſalterio*.

Q

This Letter is mute of itſelf, and it does not re-

receive its Sound but from the *u*, with which it is accompanied; ſo that theſe two Letters together, form the Sound of *ou*. The *q* before the Diphthong *ui* makes but a Syllable; as *quì*, here.

R.

The Letter *r* is naturally hard, and ſometimes we double it in our Language to give it a greater hardneſs when there is Occaſion; as, *Guerra*, *correre*, &c. ſometimes we change it into an *i*, to ſoften the Pronunciation; as, *Acciajo*, Steel; *Danajo*, Money; inſtead of *Acciaro*, *Gennajo*, January; *Febrajo*, February, for *Gennaro*, *Febraro*.

S.

This Letter has two Sounds in our Language; the one sharp; as, *ſcalzare*, *eſca*, in which Examples the *ſ* is pronounced as if it was double; as in the Words *Caſſa*, Box; *ſteſſo*, ſelf; the other Sound is ſoft, as *Roſa*, *Spoſa*, *accuſa*, &c. In the Beginning of Words, the *ſ* being before a Vowel, or before any of theſe Conſonants *c*, *f*, *p*, *t*, is generally pronounced with great Force; as, *Salute*, Health; *ſanto*, holy; *Servo*, Servant; *Scala*, Ladder; *Sforzo*, Effort; *ſperare*, to hope; *Studio*, Study.

Sc before *e*, *i*, is pronounced as *sh* in *English*; as, *ſcegliere*, to chuſe; *ſcemare*, to diminish; *laſciare*, to leave; read *shegliere*, *shemare*, *laſhare*.

T.

The Letter *t* followed by a ſingle Vowel, hash the ſame Sound as in *English*: The Difficulty lies in the Words in which it is followed by an *i*, and another Vowel: In this Caſe it has two Sounds, the one hard; as in the Words *Malattia*, Sickneſs; *Sentiero*, Foot-path; *Simpatia*, Sympathy; in which Words the Syllable *ti* has the ſame Sound as in the *English* Words beginning with *ti*; as, *Tiberius*, *titular*.

The other Sound is ſofter, like *ts* in *English*; as, *Ambitione*, Ambition; *Amicitia*, Friendship; *Gratia*, Grace; *Punitione*, Punishment; read *Ambitſione*, *Amicitſia*, &c.

Note, Alſo the *t* is pronounced hard; firſt in the firſt and ſecond Perſons plural of the Preſent Tenſes of the Verbs *Combattere*, to fight; *patire*, to ſuffer; *ſentire*, to hear; ſo we ſay, *Combattiamo*, *patiamo*, *ſentiamo*, *combattiate*, *patiate*, *ſentiate*.

2. It is pronounced the ſame in the Words where the *t* is preceeded by an *ſ*; as, *Careſtia*, Penury; *Queſtione*, Queſtion, *&c.*

Note, That in the words where the Syllable

zi is pronounced ſoft, the *Tuſcans* write and pronounce *zi*; as, *Amicizia*, *Grazia*, *Grazie*, *Adorazione*.

U.

The Letter *u* is pronounced in *Italian* like *ou* in the *English*; as, *Luna*, Moon, read *Loona*.

It is to be obſerved, the *u* before a Vowel is almoſt always a conſonant; as, *Vaſto*, *overo*, *Vizio*, *Volgo*.

In the Words *Uomo*, Man; *Uopo*, Need; *Uovo*, Egg, the *u* is a Vowel.

When the *u* is preceeded by a Conſonant, it does not form a Diphthong, but it is pronounced ſeparately; as, *Conſu-eto*, uſed; *perſu-aſo*, perſuaded; *Ru-ina*, Ruin.

It is not true, as ſome Grammarians pretend, that the Wowel *u* is not pronounced, when it is followed by an *o* in the ſame Syllable. They give us as an Example in the following Words, *Buono*, good; *Fuoco*, Fire; *Cuore*, Heart. The Rule is very falſe; for we pronounce theſe two Vowels ſo, as the Sound of both, although diſtinct, do not form together but one Syllable. After all, the true Pronunciation of it is ſo nice, that it is not to be attained by Precepts; and therefore you muſt learn it of thoſe that pronounce good *Italian*.

X.

This Letter has been received in our Language, only to preſerve it in ſome foreign Words; as, *Xanto*, *Xantippo*, *Xenocrate*, *Xerſe*; which however are pronounced as if they were written with an *ſ*, *Santippo*, *Senocrate*, *Serſe*.

We uſe one *ſ* or two *ſſ* in the Room of the *x*; that is to ſay, two *ſſ* before a Vowel, and one before a Conſonant; as, *Aleſſandro*, *Eſſemplo*, for *Alexandro*, *Exemplo*; *eſtinto*, *eſtremo*, for *extincto*, *extremo*.

In the Words taken from the Latin, where the *x* is followed by a *c*, this *x* is changed into another *c*; as, *eccellente*, excellent; *eccitare*, to excite, from *excellens*, *excitare*.

Z.

This Letter is not a double Letter, as ſome Grammarians pretend; for if it was, it could not be doubled, as is practiſed; *Pazzo*, *Bellezza*, &c.

It has two Sounds, the one ſtrong, which we call ſharp; as, *Prezzo*, Price; *Saviezza*, Wiſdom, pronouncing the *z* as *ts*. The other leſs ſharp; as, *Zio*, Uncle; *Zelo*, Zeal, read *Dſio*, *Dſelo*. There is a Kind of a third Sound that reſult from the Uſe introduced by the *Tuſcans*, who inſtead of the *t* followed by an *i* and another Vowel,

wel, uſe the *z*, which forms a Sound between the firſt two; as, *Orazione*, *Divozione*, for *Orazione*, *Divotione*.

SECT. V.

Of the Incompatibility of Letters.

If Softneſs in Languages is a Natural Beauty, without doubt it proceeds from a certain Harmony which the Diſpoſition of Letters produces. The *Italian* Tongue, by the common Opinion of every Body the ſofteſt of all the living Languages, has in ſeveral Caſes endeavoured to avoid the Meeting of Letters, which have, at leaſt, as we think, a hard and diſagreable Sound. One may ſee in this Chapter the Letters that are compatible or incompatible between themſelves; and by that judge, whether it is poſſible to form certain Sounds that the Ignorance of ſome Maſters pretend to teach, and the Simplicity of Scholars ſtrive to learn. Beſides, what I ſhall ſay here will ſerve not only for the Orthography, but will alſo contribute very much to the Pronunciation.

It is a certain Rule, that the Vowels may receive before and after them any of the Conſonants, and that the Conſonants may be preceeded or followed by any of the Vowels.

The Letter *b* receives before it *l*, *m*, *r*, *s*, but in

in different Syllables; as, *Albume*, the White of an Egg; *lambiccare*, to diſtill; *Erba*, Herb; *dibattere*, to ſhake.

It admits after it, in the ſame Syllable, *l* and *r*, as, *Obligo*, Obligation; *Ombra*, Shade.

It takes one *r* after it, and in the ſame Syllable, in the Beginning of Words; as, *bramare*, to wiſh; *brutto*, ugly.

The Letter *c* cannot be put before any other Conſonant but *l* and *r*; as, *Claſſe*, Claſs; *Clemenza*, Clemency; *Critica*, Critick; *ſcrivere*, to write; *incredibile*, incredible.

This Letter receives before it, but in different Syllables, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*; as, *Calca*, a Crowd; *Incudine*, an Anvil; *Arcano*, a Secret; *aſcondere*, to hide.

The *Italians* have not *ct* as the *Engliſh*; but they change the *c* into *t*; as, *Dottore*, a Doctor; *Aſpetto*, Aſpect; *Riſpetto*, Reſpect; and in the *Latin* Words where the *ct* is preceeded by a Conſonant, the *c* is ſuppreſſed; ſo of *ſanctus* they make *ſanto*, of *Tinctura*, *tintura*, &c.

The Letter *d* does not admit any other Letter in the Beginning of a Word but *s*; as, *Sdegno*, Diſdain; *ſdegnare*, to diſdain.

In the Middle of Words, but not in the ſame Syllable, it receives before it *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*; as, *Caldo*, Heat; *andare*, to go; *ardere*, to burn; *diſdicevole*, indecent.

It does not admit any other Conſonant after

it but the Letter *r*; as, *Drago*, a Dragon; *Drudo*, a Gallant.

The Letter *f* admits before it, but in different Syllables, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*; as, *Alfiero*, an Enſign; *Enfiato*, Swelling; *Farfalla*, a Butterfly; *disfatto*, undone.

It may be followed by the Letters *l*, *r*, either in the Beginning or in the Middle of Words; as, *flebile*, weak; *afflitto*, afflicted; *freddo*, cold; *raffrenare*, to curb.

The Letter *g* may be preceeded, but not in the ſame Syllable, by the Conſonants *l*, *n*, *r*; as, *Volgo*, the Vulgar; *vangare*, to dig; *Argomento*, Argument.

In the Beginning of Words it is preceeded by the Letter *s*; as, *ſguardo*, a Look; *ſgridare*, to rebuke.

It may be followed either in the Beginning or in the Middle of Words, by *l*, *n*, *r*; as, *gli*, the; *Guadagno*, Gain; *grave*, heavy.

The *h* is never followed by a Conſonant; it is commonly preceeded by *c* or *g*; as, *Occhi*, Eyes; *Ghirlanda*, a Garland.

The Letter *l* may be followed by all the others, except *n*, *r*, but in different Syllables.

It admits before it in the ſame Syllable *b*, *c*, *f*, *p*, *s*, *t*; as, *Blandizie*, Careſſes; *Clamore*, Clamour; *Flauto*, Flute; *placido*, calm; *ſlogare*, to diſlocate; *Atlante*, Atlas.

The Letter *m* receives before it *b*, *p*, but in diffe-

different Syllables; as, *Ambaſciata*, Embaſſy; *Impero*, Empire.

It may be preceeded by an *l*, an *r*, and an *s*, but not in the ſame Syllable; as, *Alma*, the Soul; *Norma*, Rule; *Riſma*, Ream of Paper; *Sciſma*, Schiſm.

The Letter *n* does not admit in the ſame Syllable but the *g* before; as, *ogni*, every; *Guadagno*, Gain. In the Beginning of Words it is not to be found after the *g*, but in *Gnaffe*, Zookers.

The Letter *n* admits after it, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *s*, *t*, *v*, *z*, but in different Syllables.

The Letter *p* can be followed by the Letters *l* and *r*, in the ſame Syllable; as, *placare*, to appeaſe; *Prato*, Field.

It may be preceeded by the Letters *l*, *m*, *r*, *s*, in the Middle of Words, but in different Syllables; as, *alpeſtre*, rugged; *Imperio*, Empire; *Arpa*, Harp; *Soſpetto*, Suſpicion.

It receives the Letter *s* in the Beginning of Words, and by Conſequence in the ſame Syllable; as, *Spada*, Sword; *Spettacolo*, Spectacle.

The Letter *q* admits no Conſonant after it, but is always followed by the Vowel *u*, and before, it does not admit any but the *n*; as, *dunque*, then; *unqua*, never: As for the *c* 'tis but the Changing of the *q* that ought to be doubled; as, *Acqua*, Water; *nacque*, he was born; *piacque*, he pleaſed.

The Letter *r* receives all the Letters after it;

as, *Barba*, a Beard; *Varco*, a Paſſage; *verde*, green, *&c.*

It admits before it, in the ſame Syllable, either in the Beginning or in the Middle of Words the Letters *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *p*, *t*, *v*; as, *Brodo*, Broth; *credere*, to believe; *Drudo*, a Gallant, *&c.*

The Letter *s* can be followed by all the Letters, either in the Beginning or in the Middle of Words, except the *z*.

It admits before it the Letters *l*, *n*, *r*, but not in the ſame Syllable; as, *Balſamo*, Balm; *Eccelſo*, high; *Conſolatione*, Comfort; *arſe*, he burned.

The Letter *t* admits after it the Letter *l*, but 'tis only in ſome foreign Words; as, *Atleta*, a Champion; *Atlante*, Atlas.

It admits alſo after it, in the ſame Syllable, the Letter *r*; as, *Trave*, Beam; *Scaltro*, Cunning.

The Letter *t* can be put in the ſame Syllable with the Letter *s*; as, *Iſtoria*, Hiſtory; *Studio*, Study.

The Conſonant *v* receives before it, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, but not in the ſame Syllable; as, *Selva*, Foreſt; *Convito*, Feaſt; *Diſvario*, Difference.

This Letter admits no other Conſonant after it but the *r*, when it is put inſtead of *p*; as, *ſovra*, upon; *Cavriuolo*, a Kid.

The

The Letter z can neither be preceeded nor followed by any Conſonant.

Of the Accent.

The Accent is the raiſing of one's Voice, or a remarkable Sound of one of the Syllables of the Words we pronounce.

We admit no other Accents in our Language but two, the Grave and the Acute; the Grave is expreſſed thus (`); the Acute thus (´).

The Grave Accent is to be put upon the laſt Vowel that ends the Words, either whole or abridged.

The Words that are whole; as, *Gieſù*, Jeſus; *Corfù*, the Island of *Corfù*.

The Words with a ſyncope or abridged; as, *Oneſtà*, *Beltà*, *Virtù*, *Gioventù*, inſtead of *Oneſtate*, *Beltade*, *Virtude*, *Gioventude*.

We mark alſo with the ſame Accent the third Perſons ſingular of the Verbs of the firſt Conjugation in the Preterit Tenſe; as, *cantò*, he ſung; *amò*, he loved, to diſtinguish them from the firſt Perſons ſingular in the Preſent of the Indicative Mood; *io canto*, I ſing; *io amo*, I love. It ſerves alſo for the third Perſons ſingular of the ſame Tenſes in the Verbs of the ſecond and third Conjugation; as, *credè*, he believed; *udì*, he heard; and for the firſt and third Perſons ſingular of the Future in all the Verbs; as,

as, *amerò*, I shall love; *amerà*, he shall love; *crederò*, I shall believe; *crederà*, he shall believe; *udirò*, I shall hear; *udirà*, he shall hear.

This Accent is alſo marked upon Words of one Syllable, either Nouns, Verbs, or Adverbs. In the Nouns; as, *Rè*, the King; *Pò* the River *Po*. In the Verbs; as, *hò*, I have; *può*, he can. In the Adverbs; as, *già*, already; *giù*, down; *sù*, above; *più*, more. But very often we put no accent upon the Monoſyllables, becauſe they are naturally accented, and they are always pronounced as if they had an Accent.

The Article *la*, the: and the Particle Copulative *e* and, have no Accent; but it is neceſſary to put the Accent upon the Adverb *là* there. It is the ſame with *e*: for with an Accent thus *è*, is the third Perſon ſingular of the Preſent of the Indicative Mood of the Verb *to be*, and ſignifies *is*. The Acute that is placed on the Penultima, or the laſt Syllable but one; ſerves either to avoid the Ambiguity of two Words of the ſame Spelling, but of different Signification; as, *gìa*, he went; and *già*, already: the firſt has two Syllables, and is the third Perſon of the Imperfect Tenſe of the Indicative Mood of the defective Verb *gire*, to go; and the ſecond of one Syllable is an Adverb of Time, taken from the *Latin*, *jam*, already.

It

It ſerves alſo to shew that à Word has been shortned; as, *fuggìro*, they flew; *amàro*, they loved, inſtead of *Fuggirono*, *amàrono*.

Of the Apoſtrophe, or Eliſion.

The Apoſtrophe, which is alſo called Eliſion, is the ſtriking out of a Vowel before another; which is generally marked by an inverted *c* thus (').

We uſe the Eliſion in all the Words ending with a Vowel, and followed by another that begins with a Vowel; as, *Amor' è coſa amara*, Love is a bitter thing.

The Words ending in *a*, though followed by a Vowel, ſuffer no Eliſion; *ancora ei vive*, he is ſtill alive.

Proper Names follow the ſame Rule; *Annibale è'l mio Nome*, my Name is Annibal; *Roma è una gran Città*, Rome is a great City.

Gli, the, is never written with an Eliſion; *gli amori*, *gli Elementi*, *gli Occhi*, *gli Uccelli*: but you muſt pronounce theſe Words ſo nimbly as if the final Vowels and the Initial made a Diphthong, thus; *glia-mori*, *glie-lementi*, *glioc-chi*, *gliuc-celli*.

But when the Word that follows begins with an *i*, then the *i* of *gli* is drowned, and its Abſence is marked with an Apoſtrophe; *gl' Ingegni*, *gl' Idoli*.

Theſe

Theſe Words *Animo*, Courage; *duro*, hard; *Volo*, Flight, ſuffer no Eliſion; as alſo the Nouns, whoſe laſt Vowel is preceeded by a double Conſonant; as, *deſtro*, right; *triſto*, ſorrowful; *aſpro*, sharp.

The Particle, *che*, that; in Proſe being with an *h*, has no Eliſion; but in Verſe the *h* is drowned by the Word that follows; ſo that only the *c* is left: Here are two Examples, *gli Uomini che hanno Mogli ſono privi di Libertà*, Men that have Wires are deprived of Liberty.

Se non ſe aliquanti c' hanno invidia al ſole.

On the contrary, we add an *h* either in Proſe or Verſe at the End of Words ending in *ca*, *co*, *ga*, *go*, when the Eliſion is to be made before the Words beginning with *e* and *i*; as, *Dich' io*, ſay I, inſtead of *Dico io*; *Vengh' io*, come I.

SECT. VI.

Of the Syllables that ought to be pronounced short or long in the Nouns.

The Pronunciation of Syllables, either short or long, is one of the Difficulties of our Language, that embaraſſes Foreigners, who do not know

know distinctly but one kind of Pronunciation. To facilitate however the Knowledge of it, I shall give here some general Rules, without pretending to comprehend all the Words of the *Italian* Tongue, which one may know better, if they consult my Dictionary, where all the Words are very carefully marked with a grave Accent, shewing what Words are short and what are long.

In the Words of one or two Syllables one cannot distinguish the Difference of the Long or Short; therefore, I shall speak only of the Words of several Syllables.

The Penultima, or the last Syllable but one, is always long,

1. In the Nouns ending in *ano*, or *ana;* as *umàno*, humane; *Settimàna*, a Week.

2. In the Words ending in *anza*, *enze:* as *Costànza*, Constancy; *Baldànza*, Pride; *Prudènza*, Prudence; *Penitènza*, Penitence.

3. The Nouns ending in *ca* for the Singular, and *che* for the Plural, have their Penultima sometimes long and sometimes short. The Words of the first Kind are these, *Fatica*, Labour; *Festuca*, a Mote; *Formica*, an Ant; *Lumaca*, a Snail; *Mollica*, Crum of Bread; *Monarca*, a Monarch; *Nemica*, a She Enemy; *Ortica*, a Nettle; *Pastinaca*, a Parsnip; *Patriarca*, Patriarch; *Ricerca*, Inquiry; *Spelonca*, a Grotto; *Tartaruca*, Tortoishel; *Teriaca*, Treacle; *Verruca*, a Wart; *Vessica*, a Bladder.

The

The Nouns of this Termination are all of the ſecond Kind, that is to ſay, they have their Penultima ſhort; *Càrica*, Charge; *Mànica*, Sleeve, *&c.*

4. The Nouns ending in *ce;* as, *tenàce*, clamy; *Fenice*, Phœnix; *feroce*, fierce, *&c.*

Except *Anice*, Anni-ſeed; *Artefice*, Artiſan; *Calice*, a Cup; *Camice*, an Albe or Surplice; *Carnefice*, an Executioner; *Cimice*, a Bug; *Codice*, a Book of Law; *Complice*, an Accomplice; *Indice*, Index; *Forbice*, Sizzars; *Giudice*, Judge; *Mantice*, Bellows; *Orefice*, a Goldſmith; *Pomice*, a Pumice Stone; *Pontefice*, the Pope; *partecipe*, partaking; *ſemplice*, ſimple; *triplice*, three-fold.

5. The Words ending in *cia*, *cio*, *chia*, *chio*; *Bonaccia*, a Calm at Sea: *Donnaccia*, a bad Woman; *Cornacchia*, a Crow; *Comacchio*, a Town in *Italy*.

6. The Words ending in *ina* and *ino*; *Fucina*, a Forge; *Indovino*, a Sooth-ſayer; *divino*, divine.

Except *àſino*, an Aſs; *àcino*, the Stone of Grapes; *Daino*, a Fallow Deer; *Fraſſino*, an Ash Tree; *gemino*, double; *priſtino*, ancient; *Zaino*, a Budget.

7. All the Words in *oſo*; *ritroſo*, peevish; *amoroſo*, amorous; *favoloſo*, fabulous; *litigioſo*, litigious; *miſterioſo*, myſterious.

8. All the Words in *iva*; *Aſpettativa*, Expe-

pectation, *Oliva*, Olive; *Sempreviva*, Houſeleek.

9. All the Words in *era* or *iera*; *Pantera*, a Panther; *Primavera*, the Spring; *Riviera*, a River.

Except *Camera*; a Chamber; *Cifera*, Cipher; *Colera*, Choler; *Efimera*, a Quotidian Fever; *Fodera*, Lining; *Lettera*, a Letter; *Maſchera*, a Mask; *miſera*, miſerable; *Nacchera*, a Rattle; *opera*, work; *Paſſera*, a Sparrow; *Pinzochera*, a Bigot; *Zinghera*, a Gipſy; *Tempera*, a Temper; *Vipera*, a Viper; *Zacchera*, Dirt; *Zazzera*, a Head of Hair.

10. All the Words in *ela*: *Candela*, a Candle; *Cautela*, Caution.

11. All the Nouns in *eſo* and *oſo*: *Paleſo*, Publick; *difeſo*, defended; *famoſo*, famous; *favoloſo*, fabulous.

12. All the Nouns in *me*: *Coſtume*, Cuſtom; *Letame*, Dung-hill; *Oſsàme*, an Heap of Bones.

13. All the Nouns in *ato*: *amàto*, loved; in *eta*, *eto*; *Pianèta*, a Planet; *Laurèto*, a Thicket of Laurel Trees: in *ito*: *veſtìto*, dreſſed: in *uto*: *credùto*, believed; *contenùto*, contained.

Except, *Apòſtata*, an Apoſtate; *Fègato*, Liver; *Sàbato*, Saturday, *Abito*, a Suit of Cloaths.

The Penultima is always ſhort,

1. In all the Nouns ending in *ape*: *Cànape*, Hemp; in *ipe*: *Prìncipe*, a Prince.

2. In

2. In all the Nouns in *bile ; amàbile*, lovely; *volùbile*, changeable; *incredìbile*, incredible.

3. In all the Words in *ine*; *Ordine*, Order; *orìgine*, Origine; *Vertìgine*, Giddineſs.

Except *Confine*, a Limit; *Moine*, Cajolings or Careſſes.

4. In all the Nouns ending in *elo* and *ola: Angelo*, an Angel; *Fàvola*, a Fable; *Tàvola*, a Table.

5. In all the Words in *pia*, *pio*, when the *ia*, *io*, are of two Syllables; *Indòpia*, Want; *Còpia*, Plenty.

Of the Syllables that ought to be pronounced short or long in Verbs.

We have more certain Rules for the Syllables of Verbs, to know when they are to be pronounced long or short, than we have for the Nouns; therefore what I ſhall ſay here will be very uſeful to learn.

The Penultima is always long,

1. In all the Perſons ſingular of all Tenſes that have ſome Syllables more than the third Perſon ſingular of the Preſent of the Indicative Mood; *Amàvo*, *Credèvo*, *Sentivo*, *Amài*, *Credèi*, *Sentìj*, *Amàſſi*, *Credèſſi*, *Sentìſſi*, *Amarèi*, *Crederèi*, *Sentirèi*, *Ameràì*, *Crederàì*, *Sentiràì*.

The firſt and third Perſon of the Future of the

the Indicative Mood are alſo long; but the Accent being upon the laſt Syllable, the Streſs muſt be laid upon that: *amerò*, *amerà*, *crederò*, *crederà*, *ſentirò*, *ſentirà*.

2. In the firſt Perſons plural of the Preſent, of the Imperfect, Perfect, and Future Tenſes of the Indicative, of the Preſent, and of the firſt Imperfect Tenſe of the Conjunctive Mood; *amiàmo*, *crediàmo*, *ſentiàmo*, *amavàmo*, *credevàmo*, *ſentivàmo*, *amàmmo*, *credèmmo*, *ſentìmmo* *amerèmo*, *crederèmo*, *ſentirèmo*, *amerèmmo*, *crederèmmo*, *ſentirèmmo*.

3. In all the ſecond Perſons plural of all the Tenſes; *amàte*, *credete*, *ſentìte*, *amavàte*, *credevàte*, *ſentivàte*; *amerète*, *crederète*, *ſentirète*; *amiàte*, *crediàte*, *ſentiàte*; *amerèſte*, *crederèſte*; *ſentirèſte*.

4. In all the third Perſons plural of the Future of the indicative Mood; *amerànno*, *crederànno*, *ſentirànno*.

The Penultima is always short,

1. In all the firſt Perſons plural of the Second Imperfect Tenſe of the Conjunctive Mood; *amàſſimo*, *credèſſimo*, *ſentìſſimo*.

2. In all the third Perſons plural of all Tenſes, except thoſe of the Future; *àmano*, *crèdono*, *sèntono*; *amàvano*, *credèvano*, *ſentìvano*; *amàrono*, *credèrono*, *ſentìrono*; *àmino*, *crèdano*, *sèntano*; *amerèbbero*, *crederèbbero*, *ſentirèbbero*; *amàſſero*, *credèſſero*, *ſentìſſero*.

SECT. VII.

Of Points or Stops.

It is of no ſmall Importance in Orthography, or true Writing, to obſerve with Care *Points* or *Stops*, that is, thoſe Marks which are made uſe of to diſtinguish the Parts of Sentences, and which are ſeven in Number, *viz.*

1. A Comma	thus marked	,
2. A Colon		:
3. A Semi-colon		;
4. A Period, or Full Stop		.
5. A Note of Interrogation		?
6. A Note of Admiration		!
7. A Parentheſis		()

A Comma (,) marks the little Pauſes one makes in a Diſcourſe, both to grace it, and to make it clearer to the Reader.

A Colon (:) marks a Senſe that ſeems to be compleat; but ſo that ſomething may ſtill be added to it.

A Semi-colon (;) marks a short Member of a Sentence, which though it has a Senſe of itſelf, yet contributes towards the making up of a compleat Period.

A Period or Full Stop (.) shews, that the Senſe of the Sentence is full.

A No-

A Note of Interrogation (?) is uſed when a Queſtion is asked.

A Note of Admiration (!) where one admires or cries out for Wonder; it ſerves alſo to expreſs Grief, Pain, and other violent Paſſions.

A Parentheſis () incloſes within its two Figures, a Sentence by itſelf, which may be either uſed or omitted, and yet the Senſe remain entire.

Of Analogy.

Analogy is that Part of Grammar which treats of all the Words of a Language, and diſtributes them into certain Claſſes or Ranks, commonly called *Parts of Speech*, which in *Italian* are Nine in Number, *viz.*

1. The Article.
2. The Noun.
3. The Pronoun.
4. The Verb.
5. The Participle.
6. The Adverb.
7. The Conjunction.
8. The Prepoſition.
9. The Interjection.

CAP. II.

Of the Article.

ARTICLES are Particles before Nouns, to shew their Genders either Maſculine, or Feminine; their Number, either ſingular or plural; and their Caſes, either direct or oblique.

There are ſeven and twenty Articles in *Italian*, *viz.*

Maſculine, Sing.

1. *il*, the
2. *del*, of the
3. *al*, to the
4. *dal*, from the

Plur.

5. *i*, the
6. *dei*, *de'* of the
7. *ai*, *a'* to the
8. *dai*, *da'* from the

Sing.

9. *lo*, the
10. *dello*, of the
11. *allo*, to the.
12. *dallo*, from the

Plur.

13. *gli*, the

Maſculine, Plur.

14. *degli*, of the
15. *agli*, to the
16. *dagli*, from the

Feminine, Sing.

17. *la*, the
18. *della*, of the
19. *alla*, to the
20. *dalla*, from the

Plur.

21. *le*, the
22. *delle*, of the
23. *alle*, to the
24. *dalle*, from the
25. *di*, of
26. *a*, to
27. *da*, from.

Before we engage in diſcourſing of the Articles, it will be neceſſary to make a particular Ob-

Obſervation: That the greateſt Part of Grammarians divide the Articles into Definite and Indefinite, without underſtanding well what they mean by ſuch a Diſtinction. Thoſe Particles called *Articles* are properly Prepoſitions put before Nouns, and ſometimes before Pronouns, the Infinitive of Verbs, and certain Adverbs. Now theſe Articles are Definite or Indefinite, according as their Signification, when joined with the Noun, is either determined or undetermined. The Particies *di*, *a*, *da*, are ſaid to be Indefinite, and *il*, *del*, *al*, *dal*, *lo*, *dello*, *allo*, *dallo*, and their plurals Definite; but that is only partly true. For all theſe Articles are ſometimes Definite and ſometimes Indefinite, according to the different Signification of the Nouns they are conſtrued with: as for Example, *di* is definite when joined to a proper Name; *la Gloria di Dio*, the Glory of God; *parlo di Pietro*, I ſpeak of Peter.

Di is indefinite in the following Epreſſions: *è un Comando di Rè*, 'tis a King's Command; *è un tratto di Villano*, 'tis a knavish Trick.

A is definite in this Sentence, *ho detto a Pietro*, I told Peter; but it is indefinite in this Expreſſion: *non ne parlate a niſſuno*, ſay nothing of it to any Body.

The Oblique Caſes of all Articles are alſo definite or indefinite, according to the Signification of the Words they are joined with.

They are definite in the following Examples: *la Grandezza di Dio*, the Greatneſs of God; *la Potenza del Re*, the King's Power; *ho parlato al Re*, I ſpoke to the King; *parlo della Guerra di Fiandra*, I ſpeak of the war of Flanders, *&c.*

But they are indefinite in the following Examples: *l'Uomo è un Animale ragionevole*, Man is a rational Animal; *la Donna è ſtata creata per ajuto dell' Uomo*, Woman was created for an Help to Man; *gli Uomini ſono ſoggetti a molte Infermità*, Men are ſubject to ſeveral Diſeaſes; *la Virtù è amabile*, Virtue is amiable; *ho del Vino in Cantina*, I have Wine in my Cellar; *parlate de' Principi con riſpetto*, ſpeak reſpectfully of Princes; *eſſer civile alle Dame*, to be civil to the Ladies.

By all theſe Examples it plainly appears, that moſt Grammarians have very wrong Notions about Articles; and that when the Article reſtraineth the Senſe to a particular Thing, it is definite; and when we ſpeak generally, without reſtraining to particular Things, it is indefinite.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of the Noun.

A Noun is a Word that ſerves to expreſs a Thing without any Circumſtance either of Time or Perſon; as, *Dio*, God; *Libro*, Book; *Uomo*, Man; *Caſa*, Houſe; *buono*, good; *grande*, great; *bello*, handſome.

A Noun is divided into { Subſtantive and Adjective.

A Noun Subſtantive ſignifies a Thing ſubſiſting of it ſelf, and to whoſe Signification nothing needs to be added; as, *il Sole*, the Sun; *la Luna*, the Moon; *il Mondo*, the World; *Donna*, Woman.

A Noun Subſtantive is ſub-divided into Proper, and Appellative. A proper Noun is the particular Name of any ſingular Thing; as, *Pietro*, Peter; *Guglielmo*, William; *Anna*, Anne; *Parigi*, Paris; *Londra*, London.

An Appellative or common Noun is that which is applicable to all Things of the ſame Kind; as *Caſa*, Houſe; *Città*, City; *Servo*, Servant; *Montagna*, Mountain; *Fiume*, River.

A Noun Adjective ſignifies nothing of it ſelf, but being joined to the Subſtantive, expreſſes its Qualities and Circumſtancs; as, *buono*, good;

grande, great; *bello*, handſome; *felice*, happy; ſignify nothing unleſs they be joined to a Subſtantive; ex. *buon Vino*, good Wine; *un grand' Uomo*, a great Man; *un bel Giardino*, a fine Garden; *un felice Succeſſo*, a happy Succeſs.

There are Four Things called Accidents, to be conſidered in Nouns, *viz.*

1. The Gender.
2. The Number.
3. The Caſe.
4. The Compariſon.

SECT. I.

Of the Gender.

The Gender is properly that which ſhews the Difference of Sexes.

There are two Genders in *Italian*, viz.

The Maſculine marked by *il*, or *lo*; ex. *il Rè*, the King; *lo Studio*, the Study.

The Feminine marked by *la*; ex. *la Regina*, the Queen; *la Strada*, the Street.

Although the primitive and proper Uſes of Genders, be only to diſtinguish one Sex from another; yet the *Italians*, like the *Greeks* and *Latins*, obſerve that Diſtinction even in inanimate Things; ſo that there is not one Noun in *Italian*, but what is either Maſculine or Feminine.

All Nouns in *Italian* are terminated by one of theſe Four Vowel, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*; for the two Genders.

There

There are no other Nouns ending in *u* but *Giesù*, Jeſus; *Corſù*, the Island of *Corſù; Perù*, the Province of *Peru; Gru*, a Crane; *tu*, thou. As for *Gioventù*, Youth; *Servitù*, Slavery; *Virtù*, Vertue, they are an Abbreviation of *Gioventude*, *Servitude*, *Virtude*, &c.

There are Rules to know the Genders of Subſtantives; but they are liable to ſo many exceptions, that the beſt Way would be to conſult my Dictionary, in which I have been very exact in ſetting down the Gender of every Noun; yet I will endeavour to give ſome general Rules to ſave the Beginners the Trouble to look in the Dictionary for the Gender of every Word.

Of the Nouns ending in A.

Nouns ending in *a* are commonly feminine, and make their Plural by changing the *a* into *e;* as, *la Stella*, the Star; *le Stelle*, the Stars; *la Donna*, the Woman; *le Donne*, the Women.

There are ſome Nouns in *a*, which are maſculine; ſuch as proper Names of Men; as, *Luca*, Luke; *Enea*, Eneas; *Pitagora*, Pithagoras; ſome Nouns appellative; as *Poeta*, a Poet; *Papa*, a Pope; *Profeta*, a Prophet. But theſe Nouns Maſculine end in *i* in the Plural; *i Poeti*, *i Papi*, *i Profeti*.

The Nouns ending in *à*, with an Accent over it, have no Plural, but keep the Termination

of

of the Singular; as, *la Bontà*, *le Bontà*; *la Generoſità*, *le Generoſità*.

All Nouns terminated in *ca* and in *ga*, take an *h* after the *c*, and *g* in their Plural; as *Fatica*, Labour; *Fatiche*, Labours; *Piaga*, Wound; *Piaghe*, Wounds.

The Nouns *Tema*, a Theme; *Siſtema*, a Syſtem; *Pianeta*, a Planet, are of the maſculine Gender; but *Tema*, when it ſignifies Fear; and *Pianeta*, a Prieſt's Cope, are of the feminine Gender.

Of the Nouns ending in E.

All the Nouns ending in *e*, of whatſoever Gender they may be, Subſtantives or Adjectives, change the *e* into *i* in the Plural; as, *Amore*, Love; *Amori*, Loves; *grande*, great; *grandi*, great.

EXCEPTIONS.

Of all the Nouns euding in *e*, there are but four that do not change their Termination in the Plural; *viz. il Re*, the King; *i Re*, the Kings; *la Specie*, the Kind, *le Specie*, the Kinds; *la Effigie*, the Effigy, *le Effigie*, the Effigies; *la Superficie*, the Surface, *le Superficie*, the Surfaces.

Mille, a Thouſand, preceeded by another Number, makes *Mila* in the Plural; *Mille Scudi*, a Thouſand Crowns; *Due mila Scudi*, Two Thouſand Crowns.

Mo-

Moglie, a Wife; makes *Mogli* in the Plural, leaving out the *e*; *la Cara Moglie*, the Dear Wife; *le Care Mogli*, the Dear Wives.

We have ſome Nouns that may terminate in *e* and in *o*; but the Firſt of theſe Terminations is more proper for the Proſe, and the Second for Verſes; as, *Cavaliero*, and *Cavaliere*, Knight; *Deſtriero*, and *Deſtriere*, a Horſe; *Penſiero*, and *Penſiere*, a Thought; *Corriero*, and *Corriere*, a Courier.

Genders of Nouns ending in E.

All Nouns ending in *me* are maſculine as, *il Fiume*, the River; *il Coſtume*, the Cuſtom; *Letame*, a Dung-hill.

Except *Fame*, Hunger; *Speme*, Hope; that are feminine.

Nouns ending in *re* are maſculine; except *Madre*, Mother; *Febbre*, Fever; *Polvere*, Duſt; *Torre*, Tower; that are feminine: *Cenere*, Aſhes; *Folgore*, a Thunder-bolt; *Carcere*, a Priſon; *Lepre*, a Hare; are of both Genders.

Almoſt all Nouns ending in *ore* are maſculine; *l'Amore*, the Love; *il Fiore*, the Flower, *il Dolore*, the Grief or Pain. *&c.*

Nouns ending in *ente* are maſculine; *il Dente*, the Tooth; *il Serpente*, the Serpent.

Except *la Gente*, the People; *la Mente*, the Mind; that are feminine.

All

All the other Terminations are liable to ſo many Exceptions, that it is impoſſible the Reader ſhould reap any Benefit from the Rules we could give him.

Of Nouns ending in I.

The Number of Nouns ending in *i* is very ſmall; and they are all maſculine; ſuch as the Days of the Week; *Lunedì*, Monday; *Martedì*, Tueſday, *&c.* Proper Names of Men; as, *Giovanni*, John; *Luigi*, Lewis, *&c.* Names of Cities; as, *Parigi*, Paris; *Napoli*, Naples, *&c.* The Cardinal Numbers; as, *Dieci*, Ten; *Undici*, Elèven; *Venti*, Twenty, *&c.* Names of Families; as, *Neri*, *Mattei*, *Medici*, &c.

All theſe Nouns ending in *i*, if we were to decline them in the Plural, would keep the ſame Termination; as, *il Dì*, the Day; *i Dì*, the Days.

The Noun *pari*, equal; is of both Genders, and both Numbers; *pari voſtro*, your equal; *pari voſtra*, your equal.

Of Nouns ending in O.

All Nouns ending in *o* are maſculine; and change the *o* into *i* in the Plural; as, *il Libro*, the Book; *i Libri*, the Books.

Except *Mano*, the Hand, which is feminine; *la Mano*, the Hand; *le Mani*, the Hands,

The

The Word *Tempora*, which is the Plural of *Tempo*, ſtill keeps its antient Termination; but it ſignifies only the Ember Weeks; as, *le Quattro Tempora*, the Four Ember Weeks.

Uomo, Man, not only changes the *o* into *i* in the Plural, but it takes a Syllable more; as, *Uomo*, Man; *Uomini*, Men.

Turbo, a Whirl-wind, follows the ſame Termination; *Turbini*, Whirl-winds.

Obſervations upon the Nouns in aro.

Nouns ſubſtantive in *aro*, may change their Termination into *ajo*; ex. *Gennaro*, and *Gennajo*, January; *Febraro*, and *Febrajo*, February; *Scolaro*, and *Scolajo*, a Scholar: In forming the Plural, if the Nouns are terminated in *aro*, the *o* is changed into *i*, according to the general Rule; *Scolaro*, *Scolari*; but if it is terminated in *ajo*, you muſt ſtrike off the laſt *o*, leaving *ai*; as, *Scolajo*, *Scolai*, &c.

Of Nouns in co *and in* go.

Nouns ending in *co*, and *go*, of two Syllables, take an *h* in the Plural; as, *Fico*, a Fig; *Fichi*, Figs; *Cieco*, Blind; *ciechi*, blind; *Luogo*, a Place; *Luoghi*, Places.

Except *Greco*, a Grecian; *Porco*, an Hog; that make *Greci*, *Porci* in the Plural.

All other Nouns in *co* and *go* of more than two Sylla-

Syllables, do not admit of the *h* in the Plural; as, *Amico*, a Friend; *Amici*, Friends.

Except *Albergo*, an Inn, *Alberghi*.

Antico, *antichi*, antient.

Aſtrologo, *Aſtrologhi*, and *Aſtrologi*, an Aſtrologer.

Beccafio, *Beccafichi*, a Figſnapper.

Bifolco, *Bifolchi*, a Clown.

Caſtigo, *Caſtighi*, Chaſtiſement.

Catafalco, *Catafalchi*, a Mauſoleum.

Dialogo, *Dialoghi*, a Dialogue.

Fiamingo, *Fiaminghi*, a Flemming.

Reciproco, *Reciprochi*, Reciprocal.

Siniſcalco, *Siniſcalchi*, a Seneſchal.

Tedeſco, *Tedéſchi*, a German.

Traffico, *Traffichi* Traffick, or Trade.

Formation of the Plural of Nouns in io.

Nouns ending in *io*, if theſe two Letters make but one Syllable, make their plural by ſtriking off the laſt *o;* ex. *Ba-cio*, a Kiſs; *Baci*, Kiſſes; *Figlio*, a Son; *Figli*, Sons; *Rag-gio*, a Beam of the Sun; *Raggi*, Beams, *&c.*

Sometimes we admit of two *ii*, to avoid the Equivocation in the Nouns; as, *Tempii*, Temples; *Principii*, Beginnings; to diſtinguish them from *Tempi*, Times; *Principi*, Princes.

Now the general Rule for uſing two *ii* in the Plural, is, when the Diphthong *io* in the Singular makes

makes two Syllables; ex. *Incendio*, a Conflagration; *Incendii*, Conflagrations; *Nazio*, Native; *Nazii*, Natives.

To know when the Diphthong *io* forms one or two Syllables, I could not give any other Rules, but when the Nouns that end in *cio*, *chio*, *gio*, *glio*, make one Syllable of *io*, ex. *Impaccio*, *Impacci*, Embaraſment; *Occhio*, *Occhi*, Eye; *Paggio*, *Paggi*, Page; *Scoglio*, *Scogli*, Rock; *Figlio*, *Figli*, Son.

Note, that the *Tuſcans*, inſtead of uſing two *ii*, write one *i* thus, *j*. *ſtudj*, *varj*.

Of the Nouns in U.

We have already ſaid, there is no Nouns in *Italian* ending in *u*, but that of our Saviour, *Gieſù*, Jeſus; *tu*, thou; *Peru*, the Province of *Peru*; *Corfu*, the Island of *Corfu*; *Gru*, a Crane. As for *Virtù*, Vertue; *Gioventù*, Youth; and the like; I take them to be Nouns abridged of *Virtute* or *Virtude*; *Gioventude*, or *Gioventude*.

Of the Augmentatives.

We have this advantage in our Language, that by adding a Syllable to our Nouns, we increaſe or diminish their Signification; as, *Cappello*, a Hat; *Cappellino*, or *Cappellacio*,

cio, a large Hat; *Cappelletto*, or *Cappelluccio*, a little Hat.

The Termination of the Augmentatives, are in *one*, in *accio*, or *accia*. The Firſt increaſes the Signification of the Thing; the other make ſomething bad, or deſpicable in it, *ex.* *Donna*, a Woman; *Donnone*, a large Woman; *Donnaccia*, a bad Woman; *Caſa*, a Houſe; *Caſone*, a large Houſe; *Caſaccia*, an old ruinous Houſe.

Note, that the Augmentatives cannot be formed of all Nouns, becauſe, ſometimes they would ſignify a quite different Thing; as for ex. *Tinca*, a Tench; if one would form of it a Noun in *one*, he would make a great blunder.

Note, alſo, that the Augmentatives in *one* imply ſomething vile and deſpicable; ex. *Dormiglione*, a great Sluggard; *Gocciolone*, a Dunce, a Ninny.

The Augmentatives in *one* are maſculines, though they are formed of Nouns feminine; as *Porta*, F. makes *Portone*, M. *Caſa*, F. *Caſone*, M.

We have another Kind of Augmentatives in *ame*, which ſignify a great Quantity, or great Number; ex. *Oſſo*, a Bone, *Oſſame*, a great Quantity, or a great Heap of Bones; *Genſe*, People, *Gentame*, a Multitude of People.

Our Language has alſo Augmentatives in *aglia*, but marks with it ſomething vile and deſpicable;

table; ex. *Cane*, a Dog; *Canaglia*, the Mob, the Dregs of the People; *Gente*, People; *Gentaglia*, the Mobility, the common People.

Note, alſo, that there are ſome Nouns that have all the aboveſaid Terminations without being Augmentatives: *ex.* in *one*, we have *Baſtone*, a Club in *Ame*, as, *Stame*, Yarn; in *Accio*, as *Laccio*, a Gin, or Snare; in *Accia*, as *Faccia*, the Face; in *Aglia*, as *Maglia*, a Mail.

Of the Diminutives.

Although the Diminutives are augmented with one or more Syllables, they leſſen, however, the Signification of their Primitives: Their different Terminations are;

In *ello:* as *Arditello.*
In *etto:* as *Sdegnoſetto.*
In *ino:* as *Martellino.*
In *olo:* as *Lacciuolo.*
In *otto:* as *Sempliciotto.*
In *uccio:* as *Andreuccio.*
In *uzzo:* as *Penſieruzzo.*

It is not very eaſy to know the true Signification of Diminutives; ſince they ſignify ſometimes ſomething genteel and pretty; as, *un Fanciullino*, a pretty Child; and ſometimes they imply ſomething deſpicable; as, *una Feminuccia*, a poor ordinary Woman.

Note, that there are ſeveral Diminutives that

do not follow the common Way of others; as, *Baſtone*, *Baſtoncino*; *Porta*, *Porticella*.

Note, alſo, that there are ſome Nouns ending in *ino*, *ello*, *etto*, &c. that are not always Diminutives; ſince there are ſeveral that are Primitives; ex. *Cittadino*, a Citizen; *Coltello*, a Knife; *Diletto*, Delight.

Of the Adjectives.

Adjectives in our Language have three Terminations; in *o*, for the Maſculine; in *a*, for the Feminine: and in *e*, for both Genders: ex. *il caro Spoſo*, the dear Spouſe; *la cara Moglie*, the dear Wife; *il dolce Sonno*, the ſweet Sleep; *la dolce Stagione*, the ſweet Seaſon.

Adjectives in *o* end in *i* in the Plural; *bello*, *belli*, *caſto*, *caſti*: Adjectives in *a* end in *e*, *bella*, *belle*; *caſta*, *caſte*: Adjectives in *e* end in *i*, both for Maſculine and Feminine; *i dolci Baci*, the ſweet Kiſſes; *le dolci Parole*, the ſweet Words.

Several Adjectives taking the Article before, become Subſtantives, ex. *il Dolce mi piace*, I love ſweet Things; *il Bello è amato da tutti*, every body loves what is handſome.

SECT. II.

Of the Number.

The Number is an Accident of Nouns, which ſhews

ſhews the Difference that is betwixt one and ſeveral Things.

And ſo it is either { Singular, or Plural.

The Singular ſpeaketh of one ſingle Thing; as, *il Libro*, the Book; *la Caſa*, the Houſe.

The Plural ſpeaketh of more Things than one; as, *i Libri*, the Books; *le Caſe*, the Houſes.

The Plural is generally formed by changing the Termination of the Singular, for the Nouns in *o*, and in *e*, into *i*; as, *Libro*, Book; *Libri*, Books; *Madre*, Mother; *Madri*, Mothers; for the Nouns in *a*, into *e*; as, *Caſa*, Houſe; *Caſe*, Houſes.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Some Nouns in *o* and in *e* are generally uſed in the Singular; as, *Oro*, Gold; *Argento*, Silver; *Cento*, an Hundred.

There are ſome Nouns ending in *e* that do not alter their Termination in the Plural; as, *il Re*, *i Re*; *la Specie*, *le Specie*; *la Superficie*, *le Superficie*; *l'Effigie*, *le Effigie*.

Singular Nouns ending in *a*, of the maſculine Gender, make their Termination in *i* in the Plural; as, *Poeta*, *Poeti*; *Profeta*, *Profeti*; *Papa*, *Papi*.

All Nouns ending in *à*, with an Accent, are

ſtill the ſame, both in the Singular and Plural; as, *la Bontà*, *le Bontà*, *la Maeſtà*, *le Maeſtà*, &c.

Nouns ending in *i*, keep the ſame Termination in the Plural; as, *il Dì*, *i Dì*; *il Lunedì*, *i Lunedì*, &c.

Singular Nouns in *u*, are ſtill the ſame in the Plural; as, *la Virtù*, *le Virtù*; *la Gioventù*, *le Gioventù*, &c.

Nouns of Cardinal Numbers are the ſame in the Plural; as, *Tre*, Three; *Quattro*, Four; *Otto*, Eight, *&c.*

SECT. III.

Of the Caſe or Declenſion.

The Caſe is properly the ending or Termination of a Noun, which ſerves to diſtinguish it according to its ſeveral Significations. There is no ſuch Thing as different Caſes in *Italian*, no more than in *English*; but we have borrowed that Word from the *Latins*, whoſe Nouns have ſix diſtinct Terminations, and diſtinct Significations, *viz.* The Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accuſative, Vocative, and Ablative: But inſtead of different Terminations, we make uſe of Articles, to expreſs the various Senſes of a Word.

The Declenſion of Nouns is the Manner of turning and changing them according to their ſeveral Significations, both in the Singular and Plu-

Plural; which, as I hinted before, is performed in *Italian*, as in *English*, by the help of Articles.

Declenſion of Nouns of the maſculine Gender, beginning with a Conſonant.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. *il Libro*, the Book.	Nom. *i Libri*, the Books.
Gen. *del Libro*, of the Book.	Gen. *dei*, or *de' Libri*, of the Books.
Dat. *al Libro*, to the Book.	Dat. *Ai* or *a' Libri*, to the Books.
Abl. *dal Libro*, from the Book.	Abl. *Dai*, or *da' Libri*, from the Books.

Nouns of the feminine Gender, beginning with a Conſonant, are thus declined,

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. *la Caſa*, the Houſe,	Nom. *le Caſe*, the Houſes.
Gen. *Della Caſa*, of the Houſe.	Gen. *delle Caſe*, of the Houſes.
Dat. *Alla Caſa*, to the Houſe.	Dat. *alle Caſe*, to the Houſes.
Abl. *Dalla Caſa*, from the Houſe.	Abl. *dalle Caſe*, from the Houſes.

Nouns ending in a, *of the maſculine Gender, are thus declined,*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. *il Poeta*, the Poet.	Nom. *i Poeti*, the Poets.
Gen. *del Poeta*, of the Poet.	Gen. *dei*, or *de' Poeti*, of the Poets.
Dat. *al Poeta*, to the Poet.	Dat. *ai*, or *a' Poeti*, to the Poets.
Abl. *dal Poeta*, from the Poet.	Abl. *dai*, or *da' Poeti*, from the Poets.

Nouns ending in à *with an Accent, are thus declined,*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. *la Maeſtà*, the Majeſty.	Nom. *le Maeſtà*, the Majeſties.
Gen. *della Maeſtà*, of the Majeſty.	Gen. *delle Maeſtà*, of the Majeſties.
Dat. *alla Maeſtà*, to the Majeſty.	Dat. *alle Maeſtà*, to the Majeſties.
Abl. *dalla Maeſtà*, from the Majeſty.	Abl. *dalle Maeſtà*, from the Majeſties.

Declenſion of Nouns of the maſculine Gender, beginning with an S *followed by a Conſonant.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. *lo Studio*, the Study.	Nom. *gli Studj*, the Studies.
Gen. *dello Studio*, of the Study.	Gen. *degli Studj*, of the Studies.
Dat. *allo Studio*, to the Study.	Dat. *agli Studj*, to the Studies.
Abl. *dallo Studio*, from the Study.	Abl. *dagli Studj*, from the Studies.

Nouns

Nouns of the maſculine Gender, beginning with a Vowel, are thus declined.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. *l'Amore*, the Love.	Nom. *gli Amori*, the Loves.
Gen. *dell'Amore*, of the Love.	Gen. *degli Amori*, of the Loves.
Dat. *all' Amore*, to the Love.	Dat. *agli Amori*, to the Loves.
Abl. *dall' Amore*, from the Love.	Abl. *dagli Amori*, from the Loves.

Nouns of the feminine Gender, beginning with a Vowel, are thus declined.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. *l'Anima*, the Soul.	Nom. *Le Anime*, the Souls.
Gen. *dell'Anima*, of the Soul.	Gen. *delle Anime*, of the Souls.
Dat. *all' Anima*, to the Soul.	Dat. *alle Anime*, to the Souls.
Abl. *dall' Anima*, from the Soul.	Abl. *dalle Anime*, from the Souls.

Declenſion of proper Names.

Proper Names of Men, Women, Cities, and Villages, are generally declined in the following Manner; where it is to be obſerved, that if thoſe

Nouns be of the ſingular Number, they have no Plural; and if of the Plural, they have no Singular.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
Nom. *Pietro*, Peter.	Nom. *Maria*, Mary.
Gen. *di Pietro*, of Peter.	Gen. *di Maria*, of Mary.
Dat. *a Pietro*, to Peter.	Dat. *a Maria*, to Mary.
Abl. *da Pietro*, from Peter.	Abl. *da Maria*, from Mary.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
Nom. *Londra*, London.	Nom. *Parigi*, Paris.
Gen. *di Londra*, of London.	Gen. *di Parigi*, of Paris.
Dat. *a Londra*, to London.	Dat. *a Parigi*, to Paris.
Abl. *da Londra*, from London.	Abl. *da Parigi*, from Paris.

When thoſe proper Names begin with a Vowel, the *i* is cut off in the Article *di*, and we add a *d* to the Article *a*.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
Nom. *Antonio*, Anthony.	Nom. *Anna*, Anne.
Gen. *d'Antonio*, of Anthony.	Gen. *d'Anna*, of Anne.
Dat. *ad Antonio*, to Anthony.	Dat. *ad Anna*, to Anne.
Abl. *da Antonio*, from Anthony.	Abl. *da Anna*, from Anne.

Pro-

Proper Names of Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, Rivers, and Mountains, are thus declined.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
Nom. *la Spagna*, Spain.	Nom. *il Piemonte*, Piemont.
Gen. *della Spagna*, of Spain.	Gen. *del Piemonte*, of Piemont.
Dat. *alla Spagna*, to Spain.	Dat. *al Piemonte*, to Piemont.
Abl. *dalla Spagna*, from Spain.	Abl. *dal Piemonte*, from Piemont.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. *il Tamigi*, the Thames.	Nom. *le Alpi*, the Alps.
Gen. *del Tamigi*, of the Thames.	Gen. *delle Alpi*, of the Alps.
Dat. *al Tamigi*, to the Thames.	Dat. *alle Alpi*, to the Alps.
Abl. *dal Tamigi*, from the Thames.	Abl. *dalle Alpi*, from the Alps.

When theſe Nouns begin with a Vowel, they are thus declined.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
Nom. *l' Inghilterra*, England.	Nom. *l' Olanda*, Holland.
Gen. *dell' Inghilterra*, of England.	Gen. *dell' Olanda*, of Holland.
Dat. *all' Inghilterra*, to England.	Dat. *all' Olanda*, to Holland.
Abl. *dall' Inghilterra*, from England.	Abl. *dall' Olanda*, from Holland.

SECT.

SECT. IV.

Of the Compariſon of Adjectives.

Beſides the three forementioned Accidents of Nouns, which are common both to Subſtantives and Adjectives; there is a fourth peculiar to theſe, called Compariſon.

The Compariſon of Adjectives is the Way of increaſing, or raiſing their Signification by certain degrees, which are three, *viz.*

1. The POSITIVE.
2. The COMPARATIVE.
3. The SUPERLATIVE.

The Poſitive lays down the natural Signification of the Adjective; as, *bello*, handſome; *nobile*, noble.

The Comparative raiſes it to a higher degree, by comparing it to the Poſitive; which in *Italian*, is performed by the Adverb, *più*, more; ex. *più bello*, handſomer; *più grande*, greater.

There is alſo another Comparative which leſſens the Signification by the Help of the Particles, *meno*, and *sì*; as, *ella è meno bella di voi*, she is leſs handſome than you; *egli non è sì grande che voi*, he is not ſo tall as you.

The Superlative raiſes the Signification as high as poſſible, which in *Italian* is terminated in *iſſimo*, M. *iſſima*, F. as, *belliſſimo*, *belliſſima*, very handſome; *grandiſſimo*, *grandiſſima*, very great.

EXCEP-

EXCEPTION.

The following Adjectives go from the Rule.

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.	
M. *Buono*, F. *Buona*,	Good.	M. *Migliore*, F. *Migliore*,	Better.
M. *Cattivo*, F. *Cattiva*,	Bad.	M. *Peggiore*, F. *Peggiore*,	Worſe.
M. *Piccolo*, F. *Piccola*,	little.	M. *Minore*, or *più piccolo*, F. *Minore*, or *più piccolo*,	leſs, or leſſer.

SUPERLATIVE.

M. *Il Migliore*, F. *La Migliore*, } the beſt.
M. *Il più Peggiore*, F. *La più Peggiore*, } the worſt.
M. *Il Menomo*, or *il più Piccolo*, F. *La Menoma*, or *la più Piccola*. } the leaſt.

REMARKS.

1. Subſtantives are ſometimes improperly compared: ex. *è più Beſtia di tutte le Beſtie*, he is a greater Brute, than the Brutes themſelves.

2. When the Compariſon is made between two Subſtantives, two Adjectives, or two Adverbs, one after another, then the Particle *che* is uſed in the following Manner; *la Signora ha più Grazia, che Bellezza*, the Lady has more Grace than Beauty; *Lucrezia è più bella, che buona, Lucre-*

cretſa is handſomer than good; *è meglio tardi, che mai*, 'tis better late, than never.

3. When Compariſon is made of two Actions; *Beve più, che non mangia*, he drinks more than he eats; *è più bella, che non penſavo*, she is handſomer than I thought; *è meglio morire, che offender Dio*, 'tis better to Die, than to offend God.

4. When the Compariſon is made between two Nouns that are declined with the Article *il*, or *la*, then we uſe *del*, or *della*, according to their Gender and Number. *Ella è più bella del Sole*, she is handſomer than the Sun; *il Cielo è più grande della Terra*, Heaven is larger than the Earth; *il mio Giardino è più bello del voſtro*, my Garden is handſomer than yours; *i ſuoi Occhi ſono più riſplendenti delle Stelle*, her Eyes are brighter than the Stars; *l'Oro è più prezioſo dell'Argento*, Gold is more pretious than Silver.

5. When the Compariſon is made between two Nouns that are declined with the Article *di*, then we uſe the ſame Article for both Genders and Numbers: as, *Antonio è più ricco di Pietro*, *Anthony* is richer than *Peter*; *Io ſo meglio di voi*, I know it better than you; *queſto è più grande di quello*, this is larger than that; *la figlia è più ſaggia di ſua Madre*, the Daughter is wiſer than her Mother.

The Comparatives *maggiore*, greater; *minore*, leſſer; *migliore*, better; *peggiore*, worſe; follow the ſame Rules.

As

As we ſaid before, our Superlatives end in *iſſimo*, *iſſima*, &c. as *dottiſſimo*, *dottiſſima*, *dottiſſimi*, *dottiſſime:* But it is to be obſerved, that we never ſay, *il dottiſſimo di tutti*, the moſt learned of all; but *il più dotto di tutti:* and the Reaſon is, that our Superlatives mark an Amplification without Compariſon; and when we expreſs Amplification with a Compariſon, we uſe *più*, more; as in the following Examples. *Pietro è dottiſſimo nella Medicina*, *Peter* is very learned in Phyſick; *è la piu bella Donna di quante n' abbia mai vedute*, she is the handſomeſt Woman I ever ſaw.

SECT. V.

Of the Figure and Species of Nouns.

Beſides the four principal Accidents of Nouns already mentioned, their Figure and Species are alſo to be conſidered.

The Figure of Nouns is that Accident which shews whether they be Simple; as, *giuſto*, juſt; or Compound; as, *ingiuſto*, unjuſt.

The Species is an Accident of Nouns, whereby we know whether they be Primitive; ſuch as, *Mondo*, the World; *buono*, good: or Derivative; as, *mondano*, worldly; *Bontà*, Goodneſs.

There are ſeveral Sorts of Primitive Nouns, of which the following are the Chief.

1. The

1. The Noun Collective, which in the ſingular Number ſignifies a Multitude; as, *la Corte*, the Court; *il Senato*, the Senate; *un' Eſercito*, an Army; *una Dozzina*, a Dozen.

2. The Diſtributive, which is the contrary of the Collective, and divides a Multitude; as, *ogni* every; *due a due*, two and two.

3. The Equivocal Nouns, which have a double Meaning; as, *Tema*, a Theme; *Tema*, Fear.

4. Synonyma's, two or three of which ſignify almoſt the ſame Thing; as, *breve*, *corto*, ſhort; *forte*, *gagliardo*, *robuſto*, ſtrong, luſty, robuſt; *Via*, *Cammino*, Way, Road.

5. Nouns Numeral, which ſerve to diſtinguish the Numbers, and are either Cardinal, or Ordinal.

The Cardinal Number is the Fountain of the others, and expreſſes, or joins Units together; as, *Uno*, *Due*, *Tre*, *Quattro*, &c. One, Two, Three, Four, *&c.*

The Ordinal Number derives from the Cardinal, and ſhews the Order and Rank of every Thing; as, *Primo*, *Secondo*, *Terzo*, &c. Firſt, Second, Third, *&c.*

The Principal Derivative Nouns are the following.

1. The Verbal, which comes from a Verb; as, *Amore*, Love, from *Amare*; *Parliero*, Talker, from *Parlare*.

2. The

2. The Diminutive, which decreaſes or diminiſhes the Signification of its Primitive; as, *Baſtoncino*, a little Stick; *Figliuolino*, a little Boy; from *Baſtone*, and *Figliuolo*.

3. The Augmentative, which augments or increaſes the Signification of its Primitive; as, *Cappellone*, a large Hat; *Caſone*, a large Houſe; from *Cappello*, and *Caſa*.

4. The Name of one's Nation; as, *Italiano*, an Italian; *Ingleſe*, English.

5. The Name of one's Province; as, *Toſcano*, Tuſcan; *Piemonteſe*, Piemonteſe; *Galleſe*, Welsh.

6. The Name of one's Town or City; as, *Fiorentino*, a Florentine; *Romano*, a Roman.

7. The Nick-names given either out of Spite or Deriſion; as, *Ugonotto*, a Hugonot; *Papiſta*, a Papiſt.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Pronouns.

THE Pronoun is a Part of Speech, ſo called, becauſe it is often uſed inſtead of a Noun, to avoid the too frequent Repetition thereof, which would be troubleſome and unpleaſant.

Ex.

Ex. *Io amo Pietro, perch' egli è mio amico*; I love *Peter*, becauſe he is my Friend; which is as much as to ſay, (ſuppoſe there were no Pronouns) *Io amo Pietro, perche Pietro è mio amico*, I love *Peter*, becauſe *Peter* is my Friend.

Pronouns have ſix Accidents, viz.

1. The Gender.
2. The Number.
3. The Caſe, or Declenſion.
4. The Perſon.
5. The Figure.
6. The Species.

1, 2. The two firſt are the ſame as in the Noun.

3. The Caſe and Declenſion of Pronouns are alſo the ſame as in Nouns; with this only Difference, that ſome Pronouns have an accuſative Caſe.

4. There are three Perſons both in the Singular and Plural.

The firſt is that which ſpeaks; as, *Io vi vedo*, I ſee you; *noi vi amiamo*, we love you.

The ſecond is that which one ſpeaks to; as, *tu ſei ricco*, thou art rich; *voi ſete bello*, you are handſome.

The third is that which one ſpeaks of; as, *egli è dotto*, he is learned; *ella è amabile*, she is lovely; *eglino cantano*, they ſing; *elleno ballano*, they dance.

Note,

Note, that except theſe Pronouns, *io*, *noi*, *tu*, *voi*, all the others are of the third Perſon.

5. The Figure of Pronouns are twofold; *viz.* Simple; as, *io*, *lui*, *ella*, *noi*, I or me, he, she, we; and Compound; as, *io ſteſſo*, my ſelf; *lui ſteſſo*, himſelf; *ella ſteſſa*, herſelf, *&c.*

6. The Species of Pronouns is alſo twofold; *viz.* Primitive; as, *io*, *tu*, &c. I, thou, *&c.* And Derivative; as, *mio*, *tuo*, &c. mine, thine, *&c.*

Pronouns are alſo divided according to their Signification, into ſeven Sorts, viz.

1. Perſonal.
2. Poſſeſſive.
3. Demonſtrative.
4. Relative.
5. Interrogative.
6. Numeral.
7. Indefinite.

SECT. I.

Of the Pronouns Perſonal.

Pronouns Perſonal are five; *viz. io, tu, egli, ella, ſe*, they are declined with the Article *di*, *a*, *da*.

Io, *I, is of the common Gender, and is thus declined.*

SINGULAR.	PLULAR.
Nom. *Io*, I.	Nom. *Noi*, we.
Gen. *Di me*, or *mi*, of me.	Gen. *Di noi*, of us.
Dat. *A me*, to me.	Dat. *A noi*, or *ci*, *ce*, *ne*, to us.
Acc. *Me*, or *mi*, me.	Acc. *Noi*, or *ci*, *ce*, *ne*, us.
Abl. *Da me*, from me.	Abl. *Da noi*, from us.

Declination of tu, *alſo of the common Gender.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. *Tu*, thou.	Nom. *Voi*, you or ye.
Gen. *Di te*, of thee.	Gen. *Di voi*, of you.
Dat. *A te*, or *ti*, to thee.	Dat. *A voi*, or *vi*, *ve*, to you.
Acc. *Te*, or *ti*, thee.	Acc. *Voi*, or *vi*, *ve*, you.
Abl. *Da te*, from thee.	Abl. *Da voi*, from you.

Egli, *or*, Eſſo, *is of the maſculine Gender.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. *Egli*, or *eſſo*, he.	Nom. *Eglino*, they.
Gen. *Di lui*, of him.	Gen. *Di loro*, of them.
Dat. *A lui*, or *li*, to him.	Dat. *A loro*, or *loro*, to them.
Acc. *Lui*, or *lo*, him.	Acc. *Loro*, or *gli*, *li*, them.
Abl. *Da lui*, from him.	Abl. *Da loro*, from them.

Ella, *or* eſſa, *expreſſes the feminine Gender.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. *Ella*, or *eſſa*, she.	Nom. *Elleno*, or *eſſe*, they.
Gen. *Di lei*, of her.	Gen. *Di loro*, of them.
Dat. *A lei*, or *le*, to her.	Dat. *A loro*, or *loro*, to them.
Acc. *Lei*, or *la*, her.	Acc. *Loro*, or *le*, them.
Abl. *Da lei*, from her.	Abl. *Da loro*, from them.

Se,

Se, one's ſelf, is a reciprocal Pronoun of the third Perſon, of the common Gender, and of both Numbers, but without a nominative Caſe.

Singular and Plural.

Nom.
Gen. *Di ſe*, of one's ſelf, himſelf, herſelf.
Dat. *A ſe*, or *ſi*, to one's ſelf, *&c.*
Acc. *Se*, or *ſi*, one's ſelf, *&c.*
Abl. *Da ſe*, from one's ſelf, *&c.*

Remarks upon io, me, mi, noi, ce, ci, ne.

We often find inſtead of *Io*, *I'* with the Apoſtrophe.

I' mi vivea di mia Sorte contento.
I lived ſatisfied with my Deſtiny.

Io repeated, gives the Diſcourſe more Force or more Grace; ex. *fate pur ben voi, ch' io farò ben' io s' io potrò*, do your own Buſineſs, I will do mine if I can.

Qual Donna canterà, ſe non cant' io?
Who is the Woman that will ſing, if I do not ſing?

Different Uſes of me, mi.

Me, *mi*, that are of the Oblique Caſes of *io*, have the ſame Signification; but they are differently uſed.

1. *Me* ſerves for all the Caſes, after the Particles, *di*, *a*, *da*; ex. *di me*, of me; *a me*, to me; *da me*, from me.

2. After all the Prepoſitions; ex. *per me*, for me; *verſo me*, towards me; *contro* me, againſt me.

3. Before, or after ſome Interjections; ex. *laſſo me*, alaſs! *felice me*, *or me felice*, how happy I am.

4. Before *lo*, *la*, *le*, *gli*; as, *melo*, *mela*, *mele*, *megli*; ex. *ditemelo*, tell it me; *datemela*, give it me.

5. Before the Particle Relative *ne*; ex. *me ne pento*, I repent of it; *datemene*, give me ſome of it.

Note, that when we make an Oppoſition, we uſe *me*, without joining it to the Verb; which is very graceful in our Language; as it may be ſeen in the following Example:

Ferir me di ſaetta in quello ſtato,
E a voi armata non moſtrar pur l'arco. Petr.

Mi, ſerves only for the Dative and the Accuſative, and it is placed either before or after the Verb; as, *mi vide*, he ſaw me; *fatemi queſto favore*, do me this favour.

Mi is alſo put before the Monoſyllables *ci*, *ſi*, *vi*, *ne*; as, *continua Concordia mi ci è paruta di vedere*, I thought I ſaw there a perpetual Concord; *mi ſi fece incontro*, he met me; *ma io mi ti voglio un poco ſcuſare*, but I will excuſe my ſelf a little to you; *come a Padre mi vi ſcuſo*, I excuſe my ſelf to you, as I would to my Father; *io mi ve ne dolſi*, I grieved at it.

Mi

Mi is often put before the Verb, as an Expletive Particle; as, *io mi morrò*, I ſhall die.

Different ways of uſing ce, ci, ne.

Although I have ſaid that the Pronoun *io*, I, makes *noi*, in the Plural; yet it is to be obſerved, that we uſe very often *ce*, *ci*, *ne*, for the Dative and Accuſative Caſes; with this Difference, that we put *ce*, before the Particles *lo*, *la*, *ne*; as, *ce lo moſtrò*, he ſhewed it to us; *ce la diede*, he gave it us; *che non ce ne andiamo noi?* Why do not we go? And *ci*, is put before or after the Verb; as, *ci fece molti Regali*, he made us a great many Preſents; *ſe n' andò ſenza dirci addio*, he went away without bidding us Farewell.

Ci, either Pronoun or Adverb, being joined to the Monoſyllables, *mi*, *ſi*, *ti*, *vi*, is put before *ſi*, but with the others, it is put after: I will explain my ſelf better by the following Examples.

Dì e Notte ci ſi lavora, they work there Night and Day; *mi ci hanno fatto entrar per inganno*, they made me go in there by Treachery; *il Diavolo ti ci reca*, the Devil brings you to us; *dirà*, *che io vi ci abbia fatta venir per danari*, he will ſay, that I made you come to us for Money.

Ne for *noi*, for the Dative or the Accuſative, is put either before, or after the Verb; *perchè crudo Deſtino ne diſuniſci tu*, *s' amor ne ſtringe?* thou cruel Deſtiny, why do you part us, if

Love joins us? *Honne vedute cento come voi*, I have ſeen a hundred like you.

Remarks upon tu, te, ti.

Tu often ſerves for an Ornament, as a Particle expletive; as, *tu ti ſe' ben vendicato*, thou haſt revenged thy ſelf well.

'Tis now out of Uſe to join *tu* at the End of the Verb; as, *mandaſtu*, *aveſtu*, *foſtu*, inſtead of *mandaſti tu*, *aveſſi tu*, *foſſi tu*.

When *tu* is followed by the Article *il*, we write *tu'l*, and not *tu il*; as, *Signor*, *tu'l puoi ſaper*, Sir, you may know it.

Te, *ti*, follow the ſame Rules; as, *me*, *mi*; *te* is put after the Particles, *di*, *a*, *da*; as, *di te*, of thee; *a te*, to thee; *da te*, from thee. Alſo,

Before *la*, *le*, *lo*, *gli*; *tela*, *tele*, *telo*, *tegli*; as, *tela manderò*, I will ſend it thee, *&c.* Likewiſe, before *ne*; *tene ringrazio*, I thank thee for it. After ſome Interjections; as, *laſſo te*, woe to thee. After the Verb *eſſere*, to be, we put *te*; but this Way of Speaking is rather *Latin*, than *Tuſcan*; as *credendo ch' io foſſi te*, thinking that I was thee.

When *te* is followed by *il*, we write *te'l*, and not *te il*; as, *io non te'l potei dire allor*, *nè volli*, I could, nor would not tell it you then.

Ti is put before and after the Verb; as, *ti vergogni di dirlo*, *e non avreſti vergogna di riceverlo*, thou art aſhamed to ſpeak it, and thou wouldſt

not

not be ashamed to take it; *per dirti la cagion del mio venir a te sì ratto*, to tell thee the Reason of my coming in such a Haste.

Ti is put before *se*, and after *vi*; as, *questo chi che ti se l' abbia detto, io no'l nego*, whoever has told thee so, I cannot deny it; *vi ti porrò una Coltricetta, e dormiviti*, I will put there a little Counterpoint for thee, and sleep upon it.

Remarks upon voi, vi, ve.

Although *voi* is the Plural of *tu*, 'tis used for a single Person, which is used also in *English*; as, *voi sete molto ardito*, you are very bold.

Ve, follows the same Rules; as, *me, te*; that is to say, that *ve* is put before *la, le, lo, li, ne*; as, *vela do volontieri*, I give it thee willingly, *&c.*.

But if the Pronoun is put after the Particle, you must say *vi*, and not *ve*; *le vi recò*, he brought them to you; *io gli vi donerò*, I will give them to you.

Vi is placed before or after the Verbs; as, *questo vi dico per l' ultima volta*, I tell you this for the last Time; *a dirvi il vero, voi sete troppo importuno*, to tell you the Truth, you are too troublesome.

Vi is put before *ci, si, ti*; as, *io non so come vi ci possiamo pervenire*, I do not know how we shall come there; *vi si accordò*, he agreed to it;

vi ti menerò, I will carry you thither. But in all theſe Exemples, the Particle *vi* is an Adverb, and not a Pronoun.

Remarks upon lui *and* lei, *with the Particle* come.

We uſe *lui*, and *lei*, with the Particle *come*, when Compariſon or Equality is ſignified; as, *coſtoro ch' erano malizioſi come lui*, they who were as malicious as he: But if the Word *come* expreſſes Similitude, and not Equality, *egli* and *ella* muſt be uſed; as, *che direſte voi, s' io fuſſi nella Via come egli*, or *ella?* What would you ſay if I were in the Way as well as he or she?

Remarks upon egli, ella, lui, *and* lei, *with the Gerund*.

When any of theſe Pronouns is accompanied by a *Gerund*, independently of the Verb that follows, then *lui*, and *lei* muſt be uſed; ex. *Dormendo lui, io cantava*, whilſt he ſlept, I ſung; one may ſee by this Example, that *lui* has no Reference to the Verb *cantava*. On the contrary, one muſt ſay *egli*, and *ella*, if the Verb that follows depends upon theſe Pronouns; as, *ſcrivendo egli s' ingegnò di moſtrare la Verità del Fatto*, by Writing he ſtrove to show the Truth of the Matter; *filando ella a poco a poco s' addormentò*, as she was ſpinning she fell asleep.

Re-

Digitized by Google

Remarks upon eſſo, eſſa, deſſo, deſſa.

The Pronoun *eſſo*, is almoſt indeclineable and is uſed as a Particle Expletive before the Pronouns *lui*, *lei*, *loro*, *noi*, *voi*, *Mano*, *Piedi*; as, *con eſſo lui*, with him; *con eſſa lei*, with her; *con eſſo loro*, with them; *cominciàro a cantare, e le Valli con eſſo loro*, they began to ſing, and the Vallies with them; *con eſſo le Mani*, with the Hands; *con eſſo i Piedi*, with the Feet.

Deſſo, and *deſſa*, have the ſame Signification as, *eſſo*, and *eſſa*; but they have a Signification more energetick in expreſſing the Perſon or the Thing we ſpeak of; as, *egli è deſſo*, he is the very Man, *tu non mi par deſſa*, I do not think you are the ſame Woman.

SECT. II.

Of the Pronouns Poſſeſſive.

Pronouns Poſſeſſive, are ſo called, becauſe they ſignifiy the Poſſeſſion or Appurtenance of a Thing; and they are declined by the Article *il*, *del*, *al*, *dal*, for the Maſculine, and *la*, *della*, *alla*, *dalla*, for the Feminine.

There are Twelve Pronouns Poſſeſſive in *Italian*; viz. *il mio*, *il tuo*, *il ſuo*, *il noſtro*, *il voſtro*, *il loro*; *la mia*, *la tua*, *la ſua*, *la noſtra*, *la voſtra*, *la loro*.

EXAM-

EXAMPLES.

SINGULAR Maſc.	PLURAL Maſc.
Nom. *Il mio*, my, or mine.	Nom. *I miei*, my or mine.
Gen. *Del mio*, of my, or mine.	Gen. *De' miei*, of my, or mine.
Dat. *Al mio*, to my, or mine.	Dat. *A' miei*, to my, or mine.
Acc. *Il mio*, my, or mine.	Acc. *I miei*, my, or mine.
Abl. *Dal mio*, from my, or mine.	Abl. *Da' miei*, from my, or mine.

SINGULAR Fem.	PLURAL Fem.
Nom. *La mia*, my, or mine.	Nom. *Le mie*, my, or mine.
Gen. *Della mia*, of my, or mine.	Gen. *Delle mie*, of my, or mine.
Dat. *Alla mia*, to my, or mine.	Dat. *Alle mie*, to my, or mine.
Acc. *La mia*, my, or mine.	Acc. *Le mie*, my, or mine.
Abl. *Dalla mia*, from my, or mine.	Abl. *Dalle mie*, from my, or mine.

SINGULAR Maſc.	PLURAL Maſc.
Nom. *Il tuo*, thy, or thine.	Nom. *I tuoi*, thy, or thine.
Gen. *Del tuo*, of thy, or thine.	Gen. *De' tuoi*, of thy, or thine.
Dat. *Al tuo*, to thy, or thine.	Dat. *A' tuoi*, to thy, or thine.
Acc. *Il tuo*, thy, or thine.	Acc. *I tuoi*, thy, or thine.
Abl. *Dal tuo*, from thy, or thine.	Abl. *Da' tuoi*, from thy, or thine.

SIN-

SINGULAR Fem.	PLURAL Fem.
Nom. *La tua*, thy, or thine.	Nom. *Le tue*, thy, or thine.
Gen. *Della tua*, of thy, or thine.	Gen. *Delle tue*, of thy, or thine.
Dat *Alla tua*, to thy, or thine.	Dat. *Alle tue*, to thy, or thine.
Acc. *La tua*, thy, or thine.	Acc. *Le tue*, thy, or thine.
Abl. *Dalla tua*, from thy, or thine.	Abl. *Dalle tue*, from thy, or thine.

SINGULAR Maſc.	PLURAL Maſc.
Nom. *Il ſuo*, his, or hers.	Nom. *I ſuoi*, his, or hers.
Gen. *Del ſuo*, of his, or hers.	Gen. *De' ſuoi*, of his, or hers.
Dat. *Al ſuo*, to his, or hers.	Dat. *A' ſuoi*, to his, or hers.
Acc. *Il ſuo*, his, or hers.	Acc. *I ſuoi*, his, or hers.
Abl. *Dal ſuo* from his, or hers.	Abl. *Da' ſuoi*, from his, or hers.

SINGULAR Fem.	PLURAL Fem.
Nom. *La ſua*, his, or hers.	Nom. *Le ſue*, his, or hers.
Gen. *Della ſua*, of his, or hers.	Gen. *Delle ſue*, of his, or hers.
Dat. *Alla ſua*, to his, or hers.	Dat. *Alle ſue*, to his, or hers.
Acc. *La ſua*, his, or hers.	Acc. *Le ſue*, his, or hers.
Abl. *Dalla ſua*, from his, or hers.	Abl. *Dalle ſue*, from his, or hers.

SIN-

SING. Maſc.	PLUR. Maſc.
Nom. *Il noſtro*, our, or ours.	Nom. *I noſtri*, our, or ours.
Gen. *Del noſtro*, of our, or ours.	Gen. *De' noſtri*, of our, or ours.
Dat. *Al noſtro*, to our, or ours.	Dat. *A' noſtri*, to our, or ours.
Acc. *Il noſtro*, our, or, ours.	Acc. *I noſtri*, our, or ours.
Abl. *Dal noſtro*, from our, or ours.	Abl. *Da' noſtri*, from our, or ours.

SING. Fem.	PLUR. Fem.
Nom. *La noſtra*, our, or ours.	Nom. *Le noſtre*, our, or ours.
Gen. *Della noſtra*, of our, or ours.	Gen. *Delle noſtre*, of our, or ours.
Dat. *Alla noſtra*, to our, or ours.	Dat. *Alle noſtre*, to our, or ours.
Acc. *La noſtra*, our, or, ours.	Acc. *Le noſtre*, our, or ours.
Abl. *Dalla noſtra*, from our, or ours.	Abl. *Dalle noſtre*, from our, or ours.

SING. Maſc.	PLUR. Maſc.
Nom. *Il voſtro*, your, or yours.	Nom. *I voſtri*, your, or yours.
Gen. *Del voſtro*, of your, or yours.	Gen. *De' voſtri*, of your, or yours.
Dat. *Al voſtro*, to your, or yours.	Dat. *A' voſtri*, to your, or yours.
Acc. *Il voſtro*, your, or yours.	Acc. *I voſtri*, your, or yours.
Abl. *Dal voſtro*, from your, or yours.	Abl. *Da' voſtri*, from your, or yours.

SIN-

SING. Fem.	PLUR. Fem.
Nom. *La voſtra*, your, or yours.	Nom. *Le voſtre*, your, or yours.
Gen. *Della voſtra*, of your, or yours.	Gen. *Delle voſtre*, of your, or yours.
Dat. *Alla voſtra*, to your, or yours.	Dat. *Alle voſtre*, to your, or yours.
Acc. *La voſtra*, your, or yours.	Acc. *Le voſtre*, your, or yours.
Abl. *Dalla voſtra*, from your, or yours.	Abl. *Dalle voſtre*, from your, or yours.

Loro, *their*, *is of the common Gender*.

SING. Maſc.	PLUR. Maſc.
Nom. *Il loro*, their, or theirs.	Nom. *I loro*, their, or theirs.
Gen. *Del loro*, of their, or theirs.	Gen. *De' loro*, of their, or theirs.
Dat. *Al loro*, to their, or theirs.	Dat. *A' loro*, to their, or theirs.
Acc. *Il loro*, their, or theirs.	Acc. *I loro*, their, or theirs.
Abl. *Dal loro*, from their, or theirs.	Abl. *Da' loro*, from their, or theirs.

SING. Fem.	PLUR. Fem.
Nom. *La loro*, their, or theirs.	Nom. *Le loro*, their, or theirs.
Gen. *Della loro*, of their, or theirs.	Gen. *Delle loro*, of their, or theirs.
Dat. *Alla loro*, to their, or theirs.	Dat. *Alle loro*, to their, or theirs.
Acc. *La loro*, their, or theirs.	Acc. *Le loro*, their, or theirs.
Abl. *Dalla loro*, from their, or theirs.	Abl. *Dalle loro*, from their, or theirs.

By

By the foregoing Examples, it plainly appears, that the *Italian* Tongue has but one Kind of Pronouns Poſſeſſive, to anſwer the double Pronouns in *English*; my, and mine; thy, and thine; our, our, or ours, *&c.* We ſay then, *Queſto Libro è mio*, this is my Book, whether *mio* be accompanied with a Noun, or be a Relative; whereas, the *English* ſay, this Book is mine, or this is my Book.

Note, alſo, that theſe Pronouns may be put either before or after the Noun; but in *English*, muſt always go before; ſo we ſay, *i miei Libri*, and *i Libri miei*, my Books.

Although I have ſaid before, that the Pronouns Poſſeſſive are declined by the Article *il*, *del*, &c. yet you muſt obſerve, that if theſe Pronouns are joined to a Noun of Quality, or Kindred, then they are declined by the Article *di*, *a*, *da*; as, *ſua Maeſtà*, his Majeſty; *di ſua Maeſtà*, of his Majeſty; *a ſua Maeſtà*, to his Majeſty; *da ſua Maeſtà*, from his Majeſty: *Mio Padre*, my Father; *di mio Padre*, of my Father; *a mio Padre*, to my Father; *da mio Padre*, from my Father; *mia Madre*, my Mother; *di mia Madre*, of my Mother, *&c.* But in the Plural, we uſe the Article *i*, *de'*, *le*, *delle*, &c. *i miei Fratelli*, my Brothers; *de' miei Fratelli*, of my Brothers, *&c. le mie Sorelle*, my Siſters; *delle mie Sorelle*, of my Siſters, *&c.*

Note,

Note, that *loro*, after a Verb is a Pronoun Perſonal; as, *io diſſi loro*, I told them; and after a Noun is a Pronoun Poſſeſſive; *i Beni loro*, their Eſtate.

SECT. III.

Of the Pronouns Demonſtrative.

Pronouns Demonſtrative ſerve to ſhew a Perſon or a Thing. We have in *Italian* but two Sorts; ſome to ſhew a Perſon or Thing that is near us, and others to ſhew a Perſon or Thing at ſome Diſtance. Theſe Pronouns are declined with the Article *di*, *a*, *da*.

SINGULAR Maſc.	PLURAL Maſc.
Nom. *Queſto*, this.	Nom. *Queſti*, theſe.
Gen. *Di queſto*, of this.	Gen. *Di queſti*, of theſe.
Dat. *A queſto*, to this.	Dat. *A queſti*, to theſe.
Acc. *Queſto*, this.	Acc. *Queſti*, theſe.
Abl. *Da queſto*, from this.	Abl. *Da queſti*, from theſe.

SINGULAR Fem.	PLURAL Fem.
Nom. *Queſta*, this.	Nom. *Queſte*, theſe.
Gen. *Di queſta*, of this.	Gen. *Di queſte*, of theſe.
Dat. *A queſta*, to this.	Dat. *A queſte*, to theſe.
Acc. *Queſta*, this.	Acc. *Queſte*, theſe.
Abl. *Da queſta*, from this.	Abl. *Da queſte*, from theſe.

Co-

Coteſto, he, or this; *coteſta*, she, or this; *coteſti*, *coteſte*, they or thoſe, are declined like, *queſto*, and *queſta*.

SING. Maſc.	PLUR. Maſc.
Nom. *Quello*, that.	Nom. *Quei*, or *quelli*, thoſe.
Gen. *Di quello*, of that.	Gen. *Di quei*, or *quelli*, of thoſe.
Dat. *A quello*, to that.	Dat. *A quei*, or *quelli*, to thoſe.
Acc. *Quello*, that.	Acc. *Quei*, or *quelli*, thoſe.
Abl. *Da quello*, from that.	Abl. *Da quei*, or *quelli*, from thoſe.

SING. Fem.	PLUR. Fem.
Nom. *Quella*, that.	Nom. *Quelle*, thoſe.
Gen. *Di quella*, of that.	Gen. *Di quelle*, of thoſe.
Dat. *A quella*, to that.	Dat. *A quelle*, to thoſe.
Acc. *Quella*, that.	Acc. *Quelle*, thoſe.
Abl. *Da quella*, from that.	Abl. *Da quelle*, from thoſe.

SING. Maſc.

Nom. *Coſtui*, he, or this Man.
Gen. *Di coſtui*, of him, or this Man.
Dat. *A coſtui*, to him, or this Man.
Acc. *Coſtui*, him, or this Man.
Abl. *Da coſtui*, from him, or this Man.

SIN-

SINGULAR Fem.

Nom. *Coſtei*, she, or this Woman.
Gen. *Di coſtei*, of her, or of this Woman.
Dat. *A coſtei*, to her, or to this Woman.
Acc. *Coſtei*, her, or to this Woman.
Abl. *Da coſtei*, from her, or from this Woman.

PLURAL Maſc. Fem.

Nom. *Coſtoro*, they, or theſe Men and Women.
Gen. *Di coſtoro*, of them, *&c.*
Dat. *A coſtoro*, to them, *&c.*
Acc. *Coſtoro*, them, *&c.*
Abl. *Da coſtoro*, from them, *&c.*

Coſteſtui, *he or this Man;* coteſtei, *she, or this Woman, are declined like* coſtui, *and* coſtei.

SINGULAR Maſc.

Nom. *colui*, he, or that Man.
Gen. *Di colui*, of him, or of that Man.
Dat. *A colui*, to him, or to that Man.
Acc. *colui*, him, or that Man.
Abl. *Da colui*, from him, or from that Man.

SINGULAR Fem.

Nom. *Colei*, she, or that Woman.
Gen. *Di colei*, of her, or of that Woman.
Dat. *A colei*, to her, or to that Woman.
Acc. *Colei*, her, or that Woman.
Abl. *Da colei*, from her, or from that Woman.

PLURAL Maſc. and Fem.

Nom. *Coloro*, they, or thoſe Men or Women.
Gen. *Di coloro*, of them, *&c.*
Dat. *A coloro*, to them, *&c.*
Acc. *Coloro*, them, *&c.*
Abl. *Da coloro*, from them, *&c.*

SINGULAR.

Nom. *Ciò*, this, or that.
Gen. *Di ciò*, of this, or that.
Dat. *A ciò*, to this, or that.
Acc. *Ciò*, this, or that.
Abl. *Da ciò*, from this, or that.

Remarks upon the Pronouns Demonſtrative.

One ought to ſay *queſti*, and never *queſto*, when this Pronoun is uſed alone for this Man; as, *queſti vorrebbe perſuadermi, che*, &c. this Man would perſuade me, that, *&c.*

If *queſto* is uſed alone, and without any Subſtantive, it ſignifies this or that; as, *queſto vi dico per l' ultima volta*, I tell you this for the laſt Time; *queſto mi piace*, I like this.

When it is joined with a Subſtantive, it agrees with it in Gender, Number, and Caſe; as, *queſto Vizio*, this Vice; *queſta Virtù*, this Virtue; *queſti Doni*, theſe Gifts; *queſte Parole*, theſe Words.

There is always ſome Difference between *queſto*, and *coteſto*, *queſta* and *coteſta*; for *queſto* is uſed

uſed by him that ſpeaks to another; as, *vi ho partecipato queſto mio penſiero, perchè sò che ſete mio Amico*, I have imparted this Reſolution of mine to you, knowing you to be my Friend; and *coteſto* is uſed by the Perſon that is ſpoken to; as, *coteſto voſtro penſiero mi piace*, I approve of this your Reſolution.

Before *Mane*, or *Mattina*, *Sera*, *Notte*, we put *ſta* inſtead of *queſta*; as, *Stamane*, or *Stamattina*, this Morning; *Staſera*, or *Stanotte*, this Night. But before all other Words we always ſay *queſta*.

Note, that we make Uſe of *queſto* and *queſta*, when the Thing ſpoken of is near; and of *quello* and *quella*, when the Thing ſpoken of is more remote.

Coſtui, and *coteſtui*, *coſtei*, and *coteſtei*, have almoſt the ſame Signification; the only Difference, is, that *coteſtui* and *coteſtei* ſerve to show a Thing near, and *coſtui* and *coſtei*, a Thing more diſtant.

Note, alſo, that theſe Pronouns are always relative to a Subſtantive animate.

The Pronoun *ciò*, is indeclinable, and ſignifies *queſto*, this or that, and is always Relative to a Subſtantive inanimate: as,

Nè di ciò lei, ma mia Ventura incolpo, nor do I lay the Fault of that on her, but on my bad Fate. Upon ſome Occaſions *ciò* has been uſed as Relative to an animate Thing; as, *la quale io credei incontanente, ch' ella foſſe ciò ch' ella era*, whom I ſoon knew to be what I thought she was; *Ric. Minut.*

SECT. IV.

Of the Pronouns Relative.

Pronouns Relative, are thoſe which ſhow the Relation, or Reference, which a Noun has to what follows it.

Moſt Pronouns in *Italian* have ſometimes a Relative Signification; but the chiefeſt and properly ſo called Relative, are *che*, and *quale*.

Note, that *che* has two Significations, of the Thing, and of the Perſon. When it is Relative to a Thing, 'tis common to all Numbers, Genders, and Caſes; as, *il Libro*, *che*, the Book, which; *la Lettera*, *che*, the Letter, which; *i Libri*, *che*, the Books, which; *le Lettere*, *che*, the Letters, which; and it is declined thus.

SINGULAR and PLURAL.

Nom. *Che*, which.
Gen. *Di che*, of which.
Dat. *A che*, to which.
Acc. *Che*, which.
Abl. *Da che*, from which.

Che, when it is relative to a Perſon, and ſignifies who, is either Maſculine or Feminine, and ſerves for both the Numbers, Singular and Plural; but 'tis uſed only in the Nominative Caſe of both Numbers; and for the other Caſes we ſay *cui*; and 'tis declined thus;

SIN-

SINGULAR and PLURAL.

Nom. *Che*, who.
Gen. *Di cui*, of whom, or whoſe.
Dat. *A cui*, or *cui*, to whom.
Acc. *Che*, or *cui*, whom.
Abl. *Da cui*, from whom.

Quale, when it is taken relatively, requires the Article *il*, or *la*; as, *Pietro*, *il quale*; *Peter*, who; *la Doglia*, *la quale*; the Grief, which; it is declined thus;

SINGULAR Maſc.	PLURAL Maſc.
Nom. *il quale*, who, or which.	Nom. *i quali*, who, or which.
Gen. *del quale*, of whom, or which.	Gen. *de' quali*, of whom, or which.
Dat. *al quale*, to whom, or which.	Dat. *a' quali*, to whom, or which.
Acc. *il quale*, whom, or which.	Acc. *i quali*, whom, or which.
Abl. *dal quale*, from whom, or which.	Abl. *da' quali*, from whom, or which.

SINGULAR Fem.	PLURAL Fem.
Nom. *la quale*, who, or which.	Nom. *le quali*, who, or which.
Gen. *della quale*, of whom, or which.	Gen. *delle quali*, of whom, or which.
Dat. *alla quale*, to whom, or which.	Dat. *alle quali*, to whom, or which.
Acc. *la quale*, whom, or which.	Acc. *le quali*, whom, or which.
Ablat. *dalla quale*, from whom, or which.	Ablat. *dalle quali*, from whom, or which.

When *quale* denotes Quality, it is uſed without the Article; as, *ſe tu ſapeſſi, qual' è 'l dolor ch' io ſento*, if you knew what Grief I feel.

SECT. V.

Of the Pronouns Interrogative.

Pronouns Interrogative, are thoſe that are uſed in asking a Queſtion, and are only three, *viz. chi?* who? *quale?* which? *che?* what?

SING. and PLUR. Maſc. *and* Fem.	SING. and PLUR. Maſc. *and* Fem.
Nom. *Chi?* who, whom?	Nom. *Che?* what?
Gen. *Di chi?* of whom?	Gen. *Di che?* of what?
Dat. *A chi?* to whom?	Dat. *A che?* to what?
Acc. *Chi?* whom?	Acc. *Che?* what?
Abl. *Da chi?* from whom?	Abl. *Da che?* from what?

SINGULAR Maſc. and Fem.	PLURAL Maſc. and Fem.
Nom. *Quale?* which, or what?	Nom. *Quali, qua'* or *quai?* which, or what?
Gen. *Di quale?* of which, or what?	Gen. *Di quali*, &c. of which, or what?
Dat. *A quale?* to which, or what?	Dat. *A quali?* to which, or what?
Acc. *Quale?* which, or what?	Acc. *Quali?* which, or what?
Abl. *Da quale?* from which, or what?	Abl. *Da quali?* from which, or what?

SECT.

SECT. VI.

Of the Pronouns Numeral.

Numeral Pronouns ſerve to expreſs the Number and Quantity, and are theſe following;

Ogni, every.
Ognuno, *Ognuna*,
Ciaſcuno, or *Ciaſcheduno*,
Ciaſcuna, or *Ciaſcheduna*, } every one.
Niuno, or *Neſſuno*,
Veruno, *Veruna*, } no Body.
Tutto, *tutta*, all.
Molti, *molte*, ſeveral, many.
Pochi, *poche*, few.

Theſe Pronouns are declined with the Article *di*, *a*, *da*; *Ogni*, is declinable, and 'tis only uſed in the Singular; and *molti* and *molte* have no Singular.

SECT. VII.

Of the Pronouns Indefinite.

Indefinite Pronouns ſignify a Perſon or Thing in a general, and unlimited Senſe; and are the following.

Uno, *una*, one.
Gli uni, ſome.
Altro, *altra*, other.

L'Altro, *l'altra*, the other.
Altrui, others.
Alcuno, *Qualcuno*, } ſome Body.
Chiunque, *Qualunque*, } whoſoever.
Qualche, *Qualcuno*, } ſome.
Qualunque, whatſoever.
Certo, *certa*, certain.
Steſſo, *ſteſſa*, ſelf-ſame.
Tale, ſuch.

All theſe Pronouns are declined with the Article *di*, *a*, *da*; except *l'uno*, *l'una*, *l'altro*, *l'altra*; and theſe two *certo*, *tale*, which are declined either with the Article *un*, or the Particles *di*, *a*, *da*.

REMARKS.

Uno, one, when it ſtands for a Pronoun, needs not a Subſtantive to accompany it; as, *non ne paſſa per via uno, che a me non diſpiaccia come la mala Ventura*, there is not one paſſes by, but what diſpleaſes me, as ſome unlucky Thing.

Uno being uſed as a Numeral, has no Plural; but diſtributively taken, it aſſumes the Plural; as, *gli uni, e gli altri temenți Annibale*, the one and the other being afraid of *Hannibal*.

Uno accompanied with *tutto*, has a neutral Signification; as, *Corteſia ed Oneſtà è tutt' uno*, Civility and Honeſty are the ſame Thing.

From

From *uno* are formed, *Alcuno*, ſome Body; *Ciaſcuno*, and *Ciaſcheduno*, every one; *neſſuno* and *niuno*, no Body; *Qualcuno*, ſome Body; *Veruno*, no Body.

Altro, by it ſelf, without being accompanied with a Subſtantive, ſignifies, one, or another Thing; as, *altro è parlar di Morte, altro è morire*, it is one Thing to talk of Death, and another to Die; *vuoi altro?* do you want any Thing elſe.

From *altro*, are formed ſeveral Expreſſions; as *tu non ſei da altro*, you are good for nothing elſe; *per altro*, however.

Altro being a Pronoun adjective, is declined, *altro*, *altra*, *altri*, *altre*.

Altri, Being a Noun Subſtantive, ſignifies another Man; and makes *altrui* for the Oblique Caſes; thus,

Nom. *Altri*, another.
Gen. *Altrui*, or *d' altrui*, of another.
Dat. *Altrui*, or *ad altrui*, to another.
Acc. *Altrui*, another.
Abl. *D' altrui*, from another.

Laſſo! ch' io ardo, ed altri non me'l crede, alaſs! I burn, and no Body believes me.

Tal biaſma altrui, che ſe ſteſſo condanna, ſome by blaming others, condemn themſelves.

But *altri* being in the plural Number, is not declined; as, *facciano prima eſſi, e poi ammaeſtrino gli altri*, let them ſet a good Example, before they inſtruct others.

Alcuno,

Alcuno, ſome one, has Gender, Number, and Caſe; *viz. alcuno*, *alcuna*, *alcuni*, *alcune* &c. Being put alone, it has the Nature of a Pronoun, and ſignifies a Perſon indeterminately: *allor mi ſtrinſi a rimirar ſe alcuno riconoſceſſi*, I applied my ſelf to them if I could know any of them; *ſecondo alcuni affermano*, as ſome aſſure.

We uſe *alcuno*, after a Verb, that is preceeded by the Particle *non*; as, *non vi è alcuna, che ſia più bella di voi*, there is no Woman handſomer than you.

Ciaſcuno, or *ciaſcheduno*, every one, has no Plural, and it has the ſame Signification as *ognuno*; but with this Difference; that *ciaſcuno* marks ſome thing more particular, and *ognuno* has a more general Signification.

Ma ciaſcuna per ſe parea ben degna, but each of them ſeparately ſeemed well deſerving.

Ognun lo crede, e ben lo credo anch' io, every Body believes it, and I believe it alſo.

Qualunque, and *Chiunque*, have the ſame Signification, and ſignify whoſoever. They are both indeclinable, and very ſeldom are found in the Plural Number; but the Difference between them is, that *chiunque* is always ſpoken of a Perſon, and *qualunque* is ſpoken of the Perſon and of the Thing.

From the Pronouns *qual* and *che* is formed *qualche*, and it ſerves for all Genders, Numbers, and Caſes.

Qual-

Qualche tu ſie, od Ombra, od Uomo certo, whoſoever you are, either a Ghoſt, or a real Man.

In qualche Strada, o in qualche ſtrano Lido, in ſome way, or on ſome ſtrange Shoar.

Ogni and *tutto*, all, have the ſame Signification; but the Firſt is indeclinable, and for the Sigular only; the Second is declinable, both for the Singular and Plural.

Ogni Luogo m'attriſta, ov'io non veggio que' begli Occhi ſoavi, I am ſad in every Place, where I do not ſee thoſe ſweet Eyes.

In *ogni Coſa le femmine ſempre pigliano il peggio*, Women in every Thing, betake themſelves to the Worſt.

There are ſome Examples, where *ogni* is uſed in the Plural, but they are few; *appreſſo la feſta d'ogni Santi*, All Saints Day: *i miei Affanni ogni altri trapaſſano di gran lunga*, my Misfortunes are by far greater than any.

Ogni, with *coſa*, ſignifies every; it may agree with the Noun Adjective of the maſculine Gender; *fu ogni coſa di Romore, e di Pianto ripiena*, every Thing was full of Noiſe, and Grief; *caricata ogni coſa ſe ne tornò in Palermo*, everay Thing being packed up, he returned to *Palermo*.

There is another Difference between *ogni* and *tutto*; viz. that the Firſt being an Adjectiv, oughet always to be followed by a Subſtantive; and *tutto* is often imployed alone as a neuter abſolute.

Tutto is uſed very gracefully without Article; as,

as, *che tutte altre Bellezze indietro vanno*, becauſe all other Beauties do not come up to them: But when they are joined together, the Article muſt preceed; as,

Sopra gli Omeri avea ſol due grand' Ali, di Colori mille, e tutto l'altro ignudo, he had to his Shoulders two large Wings of ſundry Colours, and the reſt of the Body naked.

Niuno, or *neſſuno*, formerly *neuno*, no one, or no Body, either without, or with the Negative *non*, were always taken negatively; *non vado con neſſuno*, I go with no Body; but ſometimes they are uſed affirmatively, if a Queſtion be asked; as, *vi è neſſuno, che mi voglia?* is there any Body that wants me?

Theſe two Pronouns may equally be accompanied by the Pronoun *altro;* as, *niun' altro*, and *neſſun' altro*, no Body elſe.

Qualcuno, and *qualche* ſome, have the ſame Signification; but the Firſt is always ſingular, and the Second may be alſo plural, although it does not change its Termination.

Veruno, is the ſame as *niuno*; but the Firſt has more Force in a negative Propoſition.

Note, that theſe two Pronouns are taken negatively with the Particle *non;* otherwiſe they ſerve to affirm; as, *non fa caldo veruno*, 'tis not hot at all; *ſeco nella ſua Cella nela menò, che neſſuna perſona ſe n' accorſe*, he carried her into his Cell, without being perceived by any Body.

Steſſo

Steſſo, the ſame or ſelf, follows the Pronoun, with which it is joined; as, *io ſteſſo*, I my ſelf; *mia Madre ſteſſa*, my Mother her ſelf: It is uſed neutrally with the Article *lo*, and with the Pronouns *queſto*, and *quello*; as, *lo ſteſſo*, the ſame; *queſto ſteſſo*, this ſame; *quello ſteſſo*, that ſame.

Medeſimo, and in verſe *medemo*, the ſame, is uſed like *ſteſſo*, and follows the Pronouns it is joined with; *io medeſimo*, I my ſelf; *egli medeſimo*, he himſelf.

Tale, ſuch, or ſuch an one, ought with more Reaſon to be called a Pronoun than any other; becauſe, in ſome Caſes where we do not mean a particular Perſon, it is an indefinite Term: It is common to the maſculine and to the feminine Gender, and make *tali*, in the Plural for both Genders; *tale Carne*, *tale Coltello*, ſuch Meat, ſuch a Kniſe; *tali Mariti*, *tali Mogli*, ſuch Husbands, ſuch Wives.

Tale, is ſometimes an Adjective of Similitude, between two or ſeveral Things; and in this Senſe it is a Pronoun relative; and the Pronoun *quale* anſwers to it; as, *ſi pensò coſtui eſſer tale, quale la Malvagità de' Borgognoni il richiedeva*, this Man thought he was ſuch, as the Wickedneſs of the *Burgundians* required.

Tale, ſupplies ſometimes the Place of the Perſon, whoſe Name is not ſpecified; as, *un tal Briccone dovrebbe eſſer punito*, ſuch a Rogue ought to be punished.

We

We ſay *da tale e da quale*, inſtead of *Ognuno*, every one; as, *non ſono le mie Bellezze da laſciarſi amare nè da tale, nè da quale*, my Charms are not for every one to be in Love with.

It is better to ſay *tal*, than *tale* in the Singular; as, *tal Marito*, *tal Donna*, ſuch a Husband, ſuch a Wife; and in the Plural, we often ſay *tai* and *ta'* inſtead of *tali*.

CHAP. V.

Of Verbs.

TO give a true Definition of a Verb in general, it muſt be conſidered, what is eſſential, and what is accidental to it.

The Verb, conſidered by what is eſſential to it, is a Part of Speech, which ſerves to deſcribe the Being, and the State of Things, and of Perſons, the Actions which they do, and the Impreſſions which they receive; ex. *eſſere*, to be; *Amare*, to love; *eſſere amato*, to be loved.

If we conſider it, by what is accidental to it, 'tis a Part of Speech that receives divers Inflexions or Variations, diſtinguished among themſelves by Moods, Tenſes, Perſons, Numbers and Conjugations.

Of

Of the Accidents of Verbs.

They reckon ſix Accidents in Verbs, *viz.*

TheGender,orForm.	The Perſon.
The Tenſe.	The Number.
The Mood.	The Conjugation.

SECT. I.

Of the Gender.

The Gender or Form of Verbs, is that which ſhows their Nature, and proper Signification.

The Firſt, and the moſt general Diviſion of Verbs is to divide them into Perſonal, and Impersonal.

A Verb Perſonal is conjugated by three Perſons; ex.

Io amo, I love.	*Noi amiamo*, we love.
Tu ami, thou loveſt.	*Voi amate*, ye love.
Egli ama, he loves.	*Eglino amano*, they love.

A Verb Impersonal is conjugated by the third Perſon of the Singular only; ex. *piove*, it rains; *grandina*, it hails; *tuona*, it thunders.

A Verb conſidered in regard to the Syntax, is of four Sorts, *viz.* Active, Paſſive, Neuter, and Reciprocal.

An Active Verb is that which expreſſes an Action that paſſes from the Agent to the Patient; that is, from the Subject that does, or produces an Action, to that which ſuffers, or receives it; ex.

ex. *un buon Padre ama i ſuoi Figliuoli*, a good Father loveth his Children; *ho mangiato un Pollaſtro*, I have eat a Chicken.

A Paſſive Verb expreſſes the Suffering or Reception of an Action; as, *io ſono lodato*, I am praiſed; *tu ſei amato*, thou art loved.

A Neuter Verb ſerves to expreſs the Exiſtence of a Thing, or an Action which remains in the Subject that produces it; ex. *Io ſono*, I am; *Io ſto*, I ſtay or remain; *Io corro*, I run; *Io dormo*, I sleep.

A Verb Reciprocal is an Active Verb, that reflects the Action upon the Agent that produces it; ex. *rallegrarſi*, to rejoice one's ſelf; *ricordarſi*, to remember; ſo that all Active Verbs may be turned into Reciprocal or reflected, by the Help of the Particles *mi*, *ti*, *ſi*, &c. *io mi amo*, I love my ſelf; *tu ti lodi*, thou praiſeſt thy ſelf; *egli ſi crede*, he thinks himſelf.

SECT. II.

Of the Moods.

A Mood is an accident of Verbs, which expreſſes the different Ways an Action is done by.

There are properly but four Moods; *viz.* the Indicative, Imperative, Conjunctive, and Infinitive.

The Indicative expreſſes the Action ſimply, directly,

rectly, and abſolutely; ex. *io canto*, I ſing; *egli andò*, he went; *ella verrà*, she will come.

The Imperative Mood commands, or forbids; ex. *va*, go thou; *che venga*, let him come; *non fate queſto*, do not do that.

The Conjunctive is ſo called, Firſt, becauſe it is generally uſed with Conjunctions before it; ſuch as, *che*, that; *benchè*, although; *affinchè*, that; or, to the End that; *purchè*, provided that; *voglia Dio che*, would to God that: Secondly, becauſe it never makes a compleat Senſe unleſs it be joined with the Indicative; as, *ſe vuoi ch' io l' ami*, if you will have me love him; *credo che l' averebbe a caro*, I believe he would be glad of it.

The Infinitive has an indeterminate Signification, and expreſſes the Action without any Circumſtance, either of Number or Perſons. It has in *Italian* but two Tenſes, *viz.* The Preſent, and the Perfect; ex. *amare*, to love; *avere amato*, to have loved; and it is conſtrued with the other Moods, by which only it is determined; ex. *io voglio parlare*, I will ſpeak; *vorrei ſapere*, I would know.

Some Grammarians multiply the Number of Moods, and, beſides the Four already mentioned, they reckon the Potential, Conditional, and Optative, which is altogether void of Reaſon, ſince theſe three are all reducible to the Conjunctive.

SECT. III.

Of the Tenſes.

The Tenſe or Time, is that accident of Verbs, which shows when the Action is done; ſo that there are properly but three Tenſes; *viz.* The Preſent, the Preter or Time paſt, and the Future, or Time to come: But the Preter in *Italian* is divided into five Branches generally called,

In the Indicative Mood.	*And in the Conjunctive.*
Preterimperfect.	Firſt Preterimperfect.
Preterperfect Definite.	Second Preterimperfect.
Preterperfect.	Preterperfect.
Firſt Preterpluperfect.	Firſt Preterpluperfect.
Second Preterpluperfect.	Second Preterpluperfect.

The Imperative Mood has but one mixed Tenſe, which relates both to the Preſent and the Future.

The Infinitive has but two Tenſes, *viz.* The Preſent, and the Future.

Of the TENSES *of the* INDICATIVE *Mood.*

The Indicative Mood, as we hinted before, has ſeven Tenſes, of which four are Simple, and three Compound; the four Simple Tenſes are,

1. The Preſent, which ſignifies the Time wherein the Action is doing; ex. *Io parlo*, I ſpeak; *tu mangi*, thou eateſt, *&c.*

2. The

2. The Preterimperfect, is ſo called, becauſe it expreſſes an Action begun, and not ended; ex. *Io ſcrivevo quando entrò*, I was writing when he came in.

3. The third Simple Tenſe is called, Perfect Definite; becauſe it is uſed to expreſs a preciſe and determinate Time; ex. *Ieri parlai al Re*, yeſterday I ſpoke to the King; but you muſt obſerve, that it is never uſed to ſignify an Action done the day we ſpeak in.

4. The Future expreſſes an Action which is to be done; ex. *Io anderò*, I ſhall or will go; *egli manderà*, he ſhall or will ſend.

The three Compound Tenſes are thoſe that are compounded with the three Firſt ſimple Tenſes of the Auxiliary Verbs *Avere*, to have; or *eſſere*, to be; and the Participle Preter, or Paſſive, of the Verb which is to be conjugated; ex.

Io ho parlato, I have ſpoken.
Io avevo parlato, } I had ſpoken.
Io ebbi parlato, }

Io ſono venuto, I am come.
Io ero venuto, } I was come.
Io fui venuto, }

The firſt Compound Tenſe, called Preterperfect, or Perfect Indefinite, is uſed to expreſs an Action perfectly paſt, without determining any preciſe Time; or the Reiteration of an Action; ex. *io l'ho veduto prima di voi*, I have ſeen

it before you ; *io li ho parlato più di cento volte* ; I have ſpoken to him above a hundred Times ; or elſe it ſerves to expreſs an Action done the ſame Day one ſpeaks in ; ex. *l'ho veduto ſtamattina*, I ſaw him this Morning.

The ſecond Compound Tenſe, called firſt Preterpluperfect, expreſſes an Action, not only perfectly paſt, but done alſo before another, of which one ſpeaks, was begun ; ex. *avevo finito di ſcrivere, quando egli entrò*, I had done Writing when he came in ; *l'Opera era finita, quando il Re partì*, the Opera was done, when the King went away ; *avevo riſoluto d'andare in Italia, ma i miei affari non me lo permiſero*, I was reſolved to go to *Italy*, but my Buſineſs did not permit me.

The third Compound Tenſe, commonly called ſecond Pluperfect Tenſe, but more properly Definite Compound, expreſſes alſo an Action perfectly paſt, and preceeding another ; and, beſides, it has a perfect and determined Signification ; as, *inteſa ch' ebbi queſta novella, ne feci partecipe ſuo Padre*, as ſoon as I had learned that News, I acquainted his Father with it.

Of the TENSES *of the* IMPERATIVE *Mood*.

This Mood, as we have ſaid before, has but one Tenſe, which relates both to the Preſent, and the Future.

Of

Of the TENSES *of the* CONJUNCTIVE *Mood.*

The three Simple Tenſes are,

The Preſent, which ſometimes has alſo a future Signification; ex. *benchè io ami*, though I love; *purchè vogliate*, provided you will; *ſuppoſto che venga*, ſuppoſe he comes.

The firſt Preterimperfect, called by ſome the uncertain Tenſe, but more properly the Future Conditional; as, *ſe tu m'amaſſi*, *io t'amerei*, if thou didſt love me, I ſhould love thee.

The third Simple Tenſe is the ſecond Imperfect, which is derived from the Perfect Definite of the Indicative; ex. *benchè io amaſſi*, though I loved.

The four Compound Tenſes are thoſe that are formed of the three Simple Tenſes of the Conjunctive Mood, and of the Future of the Indicative, of the Auxiliary Verbs *avere* to have, and *eſſere* to be, and the Participle paſt of the Verb, which is to be conjugated.

Ex. The Preterperfect; as, *io abbia amato*, I have loved; *io ſia ſtato*, I have been.

Firſt Preterpluperfect, or Preter Conditional; as, *io averei amato*, I had loved, or I ſhould or would have loved; *ſarei ſtato amato*, I had been loved, or I ſhould or would have been loved.

Second Pluperfect; as, *aveſſi amato*, I had loved; *foſſi ſtato amato*, I had been loved.

Future; as, *averò amato*, I ſhall have loved; *ſarò ſtato amato*, I ſhall have been loved.

Of the TENSES *of the* INFINITIVE *Mood.*

The Infinitive Mood has but two Tenſes, one Simple, *viz.* the Preſent; ex. *amare*, to love; the other Compound, *viz.* the Preter; as, *avere amato*, to have loved.

SECT. IV.

Of the Perſons.

There are three Perſons in Verbs, as in Pronouns; ex. *io amo*, *tu ami*, *egli* or *ella ama*, I love, thou loveſt, he or she loves; *noi amiamo*, *voi amate*, *eglino* or *elleno*, *amano*, we love, ye love, they love.

SECT. V.

Of the Numbers.

Every Tenſe, in the three firſt Moods, hath two Numbers, *viz.* the Singular; as, *io amo*, I love; and the Plural; as, *noi amiamo*, we love; which in the Conjugations we ſhall mark thus, *S. P.*

SECT. VI.

Of Conjugation.

Conjugation is the due Diſtribution of the ſeveral Parts of Verbs; *viz.* Moods, Tenſes, Perſons, and Numbers.

There are three different Conjugations in *Italian*,

lian, which are diſtinguished by the Termination of the Infinitive.

The Firſt, The Second, The Third,	makes the Infinitive in	*are*; as, *amare*, to love.	
		ere; long, as, *temere*, to fear; and	
		ere, short; as, *credere*, to believe.	
		ire; as, *dormire*, to sleep.	

General Rules for the Termination of Verbs.

I thought that one could more eaſily learn the Conjugation, if he would Form himſelf an Idea of all the Tenſes: Therefore I shall give here ſome Rules, which will contribute very much to the Learning of them.

Of the Tenſes of the Indicative Mood.

All the firſt Perſons Singular of the Preſent of the Indicative Mood, do terminate in *o*; ex. *io amo*, I love; *io credo*, I believe; *io dormo*, I sleep. The ſecond Perſons Singular of the ſame Tenſe, are terminated in *i*; ex. *tu ami*, thou loveſt; *tu credi*, thou believeſt; *tu dormi*, thou sleepeſt.

The third Perſons of the firſt Conjugation are terminated in *a*; ex. *egli ama*, he loves: Thoſe of the Second and Third, are terminated in *e*; ex. *egli crede*, he believes; *egli dorme*, he sleeps.

The firſt Perſons of the Plural, terminate in *iamo*; ex. *noi amiamo*, we love; *noi crediamo*, we believe; *noi dormiamo*, we sleep.

The ſecond Perſons in *ate*, *ete*, *ite*; ex. *voi amate*, ye love; *voi credete*, ye believe; *voi dormite*, ye sleep.

The third Perſons terminate in *ano*, for the firſt Conjugation, and in *ono*, for the Second and third; ex. *eglino amano*, they love; *eglino credono*, they believe; *eglino dormono*, they sleep.

The firſt Perſons of the Imperfect Tenſe, are terminated in *avo*, *evo*, *ivo*, for the Singular; as, *io amavo*, I did love; *io credevo*, I did believe; *io dormivo*, I did sleep.

The ſecond Perſons do terminate in *avi*, *evi*, *ivi*; ex. *tu amavi*, *tu credevi*, *tu dormivi*.

The third Perſons, in *ava*, *eva*, *iva*; ex. *egli amava*, *egli credeva*, *egli dormiva*.

The firſt Perſons Plural in *vàmo*; ex. *noi amavàmo*, *noi credevàmo*, *noi dormivàmo*.

The ſecond in *vàte*; ex. *voi amavàte*, *voi credevàte*, *voi dormivàte*.

The third in *vano*; ex. *eglino amavano*, *eglino credevano*, *eglino dormivano*.

The firſt Perſons Singular of the Preter Definite, are terminated in *ai*, for the firſt Conjugation; as, *io amai*, I loved; in *ei* for the Second, *io credei*, I believed; and in *ii*, for the Third; *io dormii*, I ſlept.

The ſecond Perſons, in *aſti*, *eſti*, *iſti*; as, *tu amaſti*, *tu credeſti*, *tu dormiſti*.

The third Perſons, in *ò*, *è*, *ì*; as, *egli amò*, *egli credè*, *egli dormì*.

The firſt Perſons Plural in *ammo*, *emmo*, *immo*; as, *noi amammo*, *noi credemmo*, *noi dormimmo*.

The

The ſecond Perſons, in *aſte*, *eſte*, *iſte*; as, *voi amaſte*, *voi credeſte*, *voi dormiſte*.

The third Perſons, in *arono*, *erono*, *irono*; as, *eglino amarono*, *eglino crederono*, *eglino dormirono*.

The firſt Perſons Singular of the Future, terminate in *erò* for the firſt and ſecond Conjugation, and in *irò* for the Third; as, *io amerò*, I ſhall love; *io crederò*, I ſhall believe; *io dormirò*, I ſhall ſleep.

The Second in *rai*; as, *tu amerai*, *tu crederai*, *tu dormirai*.

The Third in *rà*; as, *egli amerà*, *egli crederà*, *egli dormirà*.

The firſt Plural in *remo*; as *noi ameremo*, *noi crederemo*, *noi dormiremo*.

The Third in *ranno*; as, *eglino ameranno*, *eglino crederanno*, *eglino dormiranno*.

Of the Imperative Mood.

The ſecond Perſons Singular of the Imperative, terminate in *a*, for the firſt Conjugation; and in *i* for the Second and Third; ex. *ama tu*, love thou; *credi tu*, believe thou; *dormi tu*, ſleep thou.

The third of the firſt Conjugation, terminate in *i*, and of the Second and Third in *a*; as *ami egli*, let him love; *creda egli*, let him believe; *dorma egli*, let him ſleep.

The firſt of the Plural, in *iamo*; as *amiamo*, *crediamo*, *dormiamo*.

The

The Second in *ate*, *ete*, *ite*; as, *amate*, *credete*, *dormite*.

The Third in *ino*, for the firſt Conjugation; and in *ano*, for the Second and Third; as, *àmino*, *crèdano*, *dòrmano*.

Of the Conjunctive Mood.

The three Perſons Singular of the Conjunctive Mood, for the firſt Conjugation, terminate in *i*; and for the Second and Third, are terminated in *a*; as, *ch'io*, *tu*, *egli ami*, that I, thou, he may love; *ch'io*, *tu*, *egli creda*, that I, thou, he may believe; *ch'io*, *tu*, *egli dorma*, that I, thou, he may sleep.

The firſt Perſons Plural, in *iamo*, as, *noi amiamo*, *noi crediamo*, *noi dormiamo*.

The ſecond Perſon in *iate*; as, *voi amiate*, *voi crediate*, *voi dormiate*.

The third Perſons in *ino*, for the firſt Conjugation; and in *ano*, for the Second and Third; as, *eglino amino*, *eglino credano*, *eglino dormano*.

The firſt Perſons of the ſecond Imperfect, for the firſt Conjugation, do terminate in *aſſi*; in *eſſi*, for the Second; in *iſſi*, for the Third; as, *io amaſſi*, *io credeſſi*, *io dormiſſi*.

The ſecond Perſons, do terminate in the ſame; as, *tu amaſſi*, *tu credeſſi*, *tu dormiſſi*.

The third Perſons in *aſſe*, *eſſe*, *iſſe*; as, *egli amaſſe*, *egli credeſſe*, *egli dormiſſe*.

The

The firſt Perſons Plural in *aſſimo*, *eſſimo*, *iſſimo*; as, *noi amaſſimo*, *noi credeſſimo*, *noi dormiſſimo*. The ſecond Perſons in *aſte*, *eſte*, *iſte*; as, *voi amaſte*, *voi credeſte*, *voi dormiſte*.

The third Perſons in *aſſero*, *eſſero*, *iſſero*; as *eglino amaſſero*, *eglino credeſſero*, *eglino dormiſſero*.

The firſt Perſons of the Preterimperfect, are terminated in *rei*; as, *io amerei*, *io crederei*, *io dormirei*.

The ſecond Perſons in *reſti*; as, *tu amereſti*, *tu credereſti*, *tu dormireſti*.

The third Perſons in *rebbe*; as, *egli amerebbe*, *egli crederebbe*, *egli dormirebbe*.

The firſt Perſons Plural, terminate in *remmo*; as, *noi ameremmo*, *noi crederemmo*, *noi dormiremmo*.

The ſecond Perſons in *reſte*; as, *voi amereſte*, *voi credereſte*, *voi dormireſte*.

The third Perſons in *rebbero*; as, *eglino amerebbero*, *eglino crederebbero*, *eglino dormirebbero*.

Of the Infinitive Mood.

The Infinitive Mood, for the firſt Conjugation, terminates in *are*; as, *amare*, to love; for the Second, in *ere* short or long; as, *crèdere*, to believe, *temère*, to fear; and for the Third in *ire*; as, *dormire*, to sleep.

The Gerund, or the Participle Active, for the firſt Conjugation, terminates in *ando*; as *amando*, loving; for the Second, and for the Third,

Third, in *endo*; as, *credendo*, believing; *dormendo*, sleeping.

The Participle Paſſive, does terminate in *ato*, for the firſt Conjugation; as, *amato*, loved: in *uto*, for the Second; as, *creduto*, believed: and in *ito*, for the Third; as, *dormito*, ſlept. But there are a great many Exceptions for the Verbs of the Second and third Conjugation.

Before we proceed, we muſt take Notice of the *Engliſh* Conjugation, with reference to the *Italian*; for, towards the true Underſtanding of the *Italian* Conjugation; it is highly neceſſary to know the *Engliſh* too, and what Tenſes in *Engliſh* anſwer the Tenſes in *Italian*.

The *Engliſh*, both in the Indicative and Conjunctive Moods, have but five Tenſes, as you ſee in the following Scheme.

INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.
Preſent, I love, or I do love.	*Preſent*, I love.
Imperfect, I loved, or did love.	*Imperfect*, I loved, or I could, ſhould, or would love.
Perfect, I loved, or I have loved.	*Perfect*, I have loved.
Pluperfect, I had loved.	*Pluperfect*, I had loved, or I ſhould, would, could have loved.
Future, I ſhall, or will love.	*Futur.* I ſhall have loved.

Where you may obſerve, that the Conjunctive bor-

borrows all its Tenſes from the Indicative, except the Future.

Now to return to our purpoſe; ſince, as you have ſeen before, the *Italians* have ſeven Tenſes in both theſe Moods,

Firſt, In the Indicative, the *Engliſh* Imperfect anſwers to the *Italian* Imperfect and Perfect Definite; and the Pluperfect to both Pluperfects; *ex.*

Io amavo, *Io amai*, } I loved, or I did love.
Io avevo amato, *Io ebbi amato*, } I had loved.

Secondly, In the Conjunctive Mood, the *Engliſh* Imperfect relates to both the *Italian* Imperfects, and the Pluperfect to both Pluperfects; as,

Io amarei, *Io amaſſi*, } I had loved, or I could, ſhould, would love.
Io averei amato, *Io aveſſi amato*, } I had loved, or I could, ſhould, would have loved.

Which ought carefully to be obſerved, to avoid the common Miſtake of thoſe, who ſay, *io vidi ſtamattina*, inſtead of *io ho viſto ſtamattina*, I ſaw this Morning; *ho viſto ieri*, inſtead of *vidi ieri*, I ſaw Yeſterday; *ſe io porterei*, inſtead of *ſe io portaſſi*, if I carried.

As for the Tenſes of the Imperative and Infini-

finitive Moods, they are the ſame in *English* as in *Italian*.

But to return to the *Italian* Conjugations; you muſt obſerve that no Verb can be conjugated through all its Moods and Tenſes, without theſe two, *avere*, to have; and *eſſere*, to be; which, upon that account, are called Auxiliary, or helping Verbs, and muſt be learned before one goes on to the Conjugation of others.

Some Grammarians reckon a third Auxiliary, viz. *Dovere*, to owe, or to be; becauſe it is often joined with the Infinitive of other Verbs through moſt of its Moods, Tenſes, and Perſons, to ſignify an Action that muſt or ſhall be done; in this manner, *io devo andare*, I ought to go, or I muſt go; *tu dovereſti far ciò*, you ſhould do that; *dovendo partire per la Campagna*, being to go into the Country. But *Dovere* is no more an helping Verb, than many others, which are joined to the Infinitive, through all their Moods, Tenſes, and Perſons; ſuch as *volere*, to will; *cominciare*, to begin, *&c.* becauſe theſe Verbs can be conjugated without them.

The

The Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, avere, *to have.*

Indicative Mood Preſent.

S. *Io ho*, I have. *Tu hai*, thou haſt. *Egli ha*, he hath.
P. *Noi abbiamo*, we have. *Voi avete*, ye have. *Eglino hanno*, they have.

Preter-Imperfect.

S. *Io avevo*, *aveva*, or *avea*, I had. *Tu avevi*, thou hadſt. *Egli aveva*, he had.
P. *Noi avevàmo*, we had. *Voi avevàte*, ye had. *Eglino avèvano*, they had.

Preterperfect Definite.

S. *Io ebbi*, I had. *Tu aveſti*, thou hadſt. *Egli ebbe*, he had.
P. *Noi avemmo*, we had. *Voi aveſte*, ye had. *Eglino ebbero*, they had.

Preterperfect.

S. *Io ho avuto*, I have had. *Tu hai avuto*, thou haſt had. *Egli ha avuto*, he hath had.
P. *Noi abbiamo avuto*, we have had.
Voi avete avuto, ye have had.
Eglino hanno avuto, they have had.

Eirſt

Firſt Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io avevo avuto*, I had had.
Tu avevi avuto, thou hadſt had.
Egli aveva avuto, he had had.
P. *Noi avevàmo avuto*, we had had.
Voi avevàte avuto, ye had had.
Eglino avèvano avuto, they had had.

Second Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io ebbi avuto*, I had had.
Tu aveſti avuto, thou hadſt had.
Egli ebbe avuto, he had had.
P. *Noi avemmo avuto*, we had had.
Voi aveſte avuto, ye had had.
Eglino ebbero avuto, they had had.

Future.

S. *Io averò*, or *avrò*, I ſhall or will have.
Tu averai, or *avrai*, thou ſhalt or wilt have.
Egli averà, or *avrà*, he ſhall or will have.
P. *Noi averemo*, or *avremo*, we ſhall or will have.
averete, or *avrete*, ye ſhall or will have.
Eglino averanno, or *avranno*, they ſhall or will have.

Impe-

Imperative Mood.

S. *Abbi tu*, have thou. *Abbia egli*, let him have.
P. *Abbiamo noi*, let us have.
Abbiate voi, have ye.
Abbiano eglino, let them have.

Conjunctive Mood Preſent.

S. *Che io abbia*, that I have.
Tu abbia, or *abbi*, thou have.
Egli abbia, he have.
P. *Noi abbiamo*, we have. *Voi abbiate*; ye have.
Eglino abbiano, they have.

Firſt Preterimperfect.

S. *Io averei*, or *avrei*, I should, would, or could have.
Tu avreſti, or *avereſti*, thou shouldſt, *&c.* have.
Egli averebbe, *avrebbe*, or *averia*, he should have.
P. *Noi averemmo*, or *avremmo*, we should have.
Voi avereſte, or *avreſte*, ye should have.
Eglino averebbero, *avrebbero*, or *avriano*, they should have.

Second Preterimperfect.

S. *Che io aveſſi*, that I had, or I should, would, or could have.
Tu aveſſi, thou hadſt, *&c.*
Egli aveſſe, he had, *&c.*
P. *Noi aveſſimo*, we had, *&c.*
Voi aveſte, ye had, *&c.*
Eglino aveſſero, they had, *&c.*

Preterperfect.

S. *Che io abbia avuto*, that I have had.
Tu abbia avuto, thou haſt had.
Egli abbia avuto, he hath had.
P. *Noi abbiamo avuto*, we have had.
Voi abbiate avuto, ye have had.
Eglino abbiano avuto, they have had.

Firſt Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io averei avuto*, I had had, or I could, should, or would have had.
Tu avereſti avuto, he had had, *&c.*
Egli averebbe avuto, he had had, *&c.*
P. *Noi averemmo avuto*, we had had, *&c.*
Voi avereſte avuto, ye had had, *&c.*
Eglino averebbero avuto, they had had, *&c.*

Second Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io aveſſi avuto*, I had had, or I could, should, or would have had.
Tu aveſſi avuto, thou hadſt had, *&c.*
Egli aveſſe avuto, he had had, *&c.*
P. *Noi aveſſimo avuto*, we had had, *&c.*
Voi aveſte avuto, ye had had, *&c.*
Eglino aveſſero avuto, they had had, *&c.*

Future.

S. *Io averò avuto*, I ſhall have had.
Tu averai avuto, thou ſhalt have had.
Egli averà avuto, he ſhall have had.

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi averemo avuto*, we shall have had.
Voi averete avuto, ye shall have had.
Eglino averanno avuto, they shall have had.

Infinitive Mood.

Preſent. *Avere*, to have.
Preterperfect. *Avere avuto*, to have had.

Participles.

Preſent. *Avendo*, having.
Coll' avere, } In having, or by having.
Con avere,
In avere,
Nell' avere,
Preterperfect. *Avendo avuto*, having had.

The Supine, or Participle Paſſive.

Avuto, *avuta*, *avuti*, *avute*, had.

The Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, eſſere, to be.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io ſono*, I am. *Tu ſei*, thou art. *Egli è*, he is.
P. *Noi ſiamo*, we are. *Voi ſete*, or *ſiete*, ye are.
Eglino ſono, they are.

Preterimperfect.

S. *Io ero*, I was. *Tu eri*, thou waſt.
Egli era, he was.

P. *Noi eràmo*, or *eravàmo*, we were.
Voi eràte, or *eravàte*, ye were.
Eglino èrano, they were.

Preterperfect Definite.

S. *Io fui*, I was. *Tu foſti*, thou waſt.
Egli fu, he was.
P. *Noi fummo*, we were. *Voi foſte*, ye were.
Eglino furono, they were.

Preterperfect.

S. *Io ſono ſtato*, I have been.
Tu ſei ſtato, thou haſt been.
Egli è ſtato, he has been.
P. *Noi ſiamo ſtati*, we have been.
Voi ſiete, or *ſete ſtati*, ye have been.
Eglino ſono ſtati, they have been.

Firſt Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io ero ſtato*, I had been.
Tu eri ſtato, thou hadſt been.
Egli era ſtato, he had been.
P. *Noi eramo ſtati*, we had been.
Voi erate ſtati, ye had been.
Eglino erano ſtati, they had been.

Second Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io fui ſtato*, I had been.
Tu foſti ſtato, thou hadſt been.
Egli fu ſtato, he had been.

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi fummo ſtati*, we had been.
Voi foſte ſtati, ye had been.
Eglino furono ſtati, they had been.

Future.

S. *Io ſarò*, I ſhall, or will be.
Tu ſarai, thou ſhalt, or wilt be.
Egli ſarà, he ſhall, or will be.
P. *Noi ſaremo*, we ſhall, or will be.
Voi ſarete, ye ſhall, or will be.
Eglino ſaranno, they ſhall, or will be.

Imperative.

S. *Sii*, or *ſia tu*, be thou. *Sia egli*, let him be.
P. *Siamo noi*, let us be. *Siate*, or *ſiete voi*, be ye.
Siano, or *ſiino eglino*, let them be.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io ſia*, that I be. *Tu ſia*, or *ſii*, thou be.
Egli ſia, he be.
P. *Noi ſiamo*, we be. *Voi ſiate*, ye be. *Eglino ſiano*, or *ſiino*, they be.

Firſt Preterimperfect.

S. *Io ſarei*, I ſhould, would, or could be.
Tu ſareſti, thou ſhouldſt be, *&c.*
Egli ſarebbe, or *ſaria*, he ſhould be, *&c.*
P. *Noi ſaremmo*, we ſhould be, *&c.*
Voi ſareſte, ye ſhould be, *&c.*
Eglino ſarebbero, or *ſariano*, they ſhould be, *&c.*

Second Preterimperfect.

S. *Io foſſi*, I were, or I should, would, or could be.
Tu foſſi, thou wert, *&c.*
Egli foſſe, he were, *&c.*
P. *Noi foſſimo*, we were, *&c.*
Voi foſte, ye were, *&c.*
Eglino foſſero, they were, *&c.*

Preterperfect.

S. *Io ſia ſtato*, I have been.
Tu ſia ſtato, thou haſt been.
Egli ſia ſtato, he hath been.
P. *Noi ſiamo ſtati*, we have been.
Voi ſiate ſtati, ye have been.
Eglino ſiano ſtati, they have been.

Firſt Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io ſarei ſtato*, I had been, or I should, would, or could have been.
Tu ſareſti ſtato, thou hadſt been, *&c.*
Egli ſarebbe ſtato, he had been, *&c.*
P. *Noi ſaremmo ſtati*, we had been; *&c.*
Voi ſareſte ſtati, ye had been, *&c.*
Eglino ſarebbero ſtati, they had been, *&c.*

Second Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io foſſi ſtato*, I had been, or I could, would, or should have been.

Tu

Tu foſſi ſtato, thou hadſt been, *&c.*
Egli foſſe ſtato, he had been, *&c.*
P. *Noi foſſimo ſtati*, we had been, *&c.*
Voi foſte ſtati, ye had been, *&c.*
Eglino foſſero ſtati, they had been. *&c.*

Future.

S. *Io ſarò ſtato*, I ſhall have been.
Tu ſarai ſtato, thou ſhalt have been.
Egli ſarà ſtato, he ſhall have been.
P. *Noi ſaremo ſtati*, we ſhall have been.
Voi ſarete ſtati, ye ſhall have been.
Eglino ſaranno ſtati, they ſhall have been.

Infinitive.

Preſent. *Eſſere*, to be.
Preterperfect. *Eſſere ſtato*, to have been.

Supine, or *Participle Paſſive.*

Stato, *ſtata*, *ſtati*, *ſtate*, been.

Participles.

Preſent. *Eſſendo*, being.
Coll' eſſere,
Con eſſere,
In eſſere,
Nell' eſſere,
} In being.
Preterperfect. *Eſſendo ſtato*, having been.

Obſervations upon the Auxiliary Verbs.

By the foregoing Conjugations, you may ſee, that the Verbs *avere* and *eſſere* are compoſed by themſelves, in which the *English* are ſometimes miſtaken; becauſe their Participles *had*, and *been*, are both governed by the Verb to have; ſo they ſay, I have had, and I have been; but in *Italian*, the Participle *avuto*, had, is governed by the Verb *avere; ho avuto*, I have had; and the Participle *ſtato*, been, by the Verb *eſſere; ſono ſtato*, I have been; through all the Tenſes.

Note, alſo, that *ſtato* is declinable; ſo we ſay *ſtato*, for the maſculine Singular, *ſtata* for the Feminine, *ſtati* for the maſculine Plural, and *ſtate* for the Feminine.

Although I have ſpoken at large of the Termination of Tenſes in the Section of the Conjugations; yet I thought, that to put all thoſe Terminations together in a Table, would be more clear, and ſooner learned; by which it will appear, that from the infinitive Mood of the three Conjugations, one may form all the Tenſes of all the Moods, by taking off the three laſt Letters: Let other Grammarians ſay what they will, their Way of forming the Terminations of Tenſes, is perplexed and intricate; and I dare ſay, that a Beginner would ſooner, and

with

with more Facility, learn their Verbs by getting them by heart, than by ſtudying their Rules.

At the Beginning of the Lines of this Table are the Infinitives, over-againſt them are the Terminations of each Tenſe, which are to be joined to the Infinitive, ſtriking off firſt the three laſt Letters; ex. *amare*, ſtrike off *are*, it remains *am*, add *o* to it, you'll make *amo*, and ſo through all the Tenſes.

Note, that this Table ſerves only for the regular Verbs; becauſe for the Irregular, we ſhall give a Table apart.

Indicative Mood Preſent.

am	are	o	i	a	iamo	ate	ano
cred	ere	o	i	e	iamo	ete	ono
dorm	ire	o	i	e	iamo	ite	ono

Preterimperfect.

am	are	avo	avi	ava	avàmo	avàte	àvano
cred	ere	evo	evi	eva	evàmo	evàte	èvano
dorm	ire	ivo	ivi	iva	ivàmo	ivàte	ìvano

Preterperfect Definite.

am	are	ai	aſti	ò	ammo	aſte	arono
cred.	ere	ei	eſti	è	emmo	eſte	erono
dorm	ire	ii	iſti	ì	immo	iſte	irono

Future.

am	are	erò	erai	erà	eremo	erete	eranno
cred	ere	erò	erai	erà	eremo	erete	eranno
dorm	ire	irò	irai	irà	iremo	irete	iranno

Im-

Imperative Mood.

am	are	a	i	iamo	ate	ino
cred	ere	i	a	iamo	ete	ano
dorm	ire	i	a	iamo	ite	ano

Conjunctive Mood Preſent.

am	are	i	i	i	iamo	iate	ino
cred	ere	a	a	a	iamo	iate	ano
dorm	ire	a	a	a	iamo	iate	ano

Firſt Preterimperfect.

am	are	erei	ereſti	erebbe	eremmo	ereſte	erebbero
cred	ere	erei	ereſti	erebbe	eremmo	ereſte	erebbero
dorm	ire	irei	ireſti	irebbe	iremmo	ireſte	irebbero

Second Preterimperfect.

am	are	aſſi	aſſi	aſſe	aſſimo	aſte	aſſero
cred	ere	eſſi	eſſi	eſſe	eſſimo	eſte	eſſero
dorm	ire	iſſi	iſſi	iſſe	iſſimo	iſte	iſſero

Participle.

am	are	ato
cred	ere	uto
dorm	ire	ito

Gerund.

am	are	ando
cred	ere	endo
dorm	ire	endo

Variations of the Auxiliary Verb, avere, to have, which are uſed only in Poetry.

Haggio, Habbio, } inſtead of *ho*, I have.

Have, Hae, } inſtead of *ha*, he or she has.

Ha-

Havite, for *havete*, ye have.
Havei, for *havevi*, thou hadſt.
Hei, for *hebbi*, I had.
Hebbon, for *hebbero*, they had.
Haraggio, for *haverò*, I ſhall have.
Haggia, for *habbia*, that he or ſhe have.
Haggiate, for *habbiate*, that ye have.
Haveſſi, for *haveſte*, that he had, or ſhould have.
Haveſſin, for *haveſſero*, that they had, or ſhould have.
Haria, for *averia*, or *haverebbe*, he or ſhe ſhould have.
Hariano, for *havriano*, or *haverebbero*, they ſhould have.

Of the Verb eſſere, to be.

So, for *ſono*, I am.
Ene, *Ee*, *Eſte*, *Eve*, } for *è*, he or ſhe is.

Semo, for *ſiamo*, we are.
Enno, for *ſono*, they are.
Fue, for *fu*, he or ſhe was.
Foſſin, for *foſſero*, that they were.
Fora, for *ſarei*, or *ſarebbe*, I or he ſhould be.
Saria, for *ſarei*, or *ſarebbe*, I or he ſhould be.
Sariano, for *ſarebbero*, they ſhould be.

Sendo,

Sendo, for *eſſendo*, being.
Suto, for *ſtato*, been.

Although, what we have ſaid about the forming of Verbs, might ſuffice, for to know all the Conjugations; however, I have thought it uſeful to give here ſome Examples.

I begin by the regular Verbs, of each Conjugation; we ſhall ſpeak afterwards of the Irregular, where I ſhall give the Remarks, of each one in particular, that I thought the moſt proper.

The three Conjugations of regular Active Verbs.

The firſt Conjugation in are; *as* amare, *to love.*

Indicative Preſent.

S. *In amo*, I love.
Tu ami, thou loveſt.
Egli ama, he loveth.
P. *Noi amiamo*, we love.
Voi amate, ye love.
Eglino amano, they love.

Preterimperfect.

S. *Io amavo*, I loved, or did love.
Tu amavi, thou lovedſt, *&c.*
Egli amava, he loved, *&c.*
P. *Noi amavamo*, we loved, *&c.*
Voi amavate, ye loved, *&c.*
Eglino amavano, they loved, *&c.*

Preter-

Preterperfect Definite.

S. *Io amai*, I loved, or did love.
Tu amaſti, thou lovedſt, *&c.*
Egli amò, he loved, *&c.*
P. *Noi amammo*, we loved, *&c.*
Voi amaſte, ye loved, *&c.*
Eglino amarono, they loved, *&c.*

Preterperfect.

S. *Io ho amato*, I have loved.
Tu hai amato, thou haſt loved.
Egli ha amato, he has loved.
P. *Noi abbiamo amato*, we have loved.
Voi avete amato, ye have loved.
Eglino hanno amato, they have loved.

Firſt Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io avevo amato*, I had loved.
Tu avevi amato, thou hadſt loved.
Egli aveva amato, he had loved.
P. *Noi avevamo amato*, we had loved.
Voi avevate amato, ye had loved.
Eglino avevano amato, they had loved.

Second Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io ebbi amato*, I had loved.
Tu aveſti amato, thou hadſt loved.
Egli ebbe amato, he had loved.
P. *Noi avemmo amato*, we had loved.
Voi aveſte amato, ye had loved.
Eglino ebbero amato, they had loved.

Futu-

Future.

S. *Io amerò*, I shall, or will love.
Tu amerai, thou shalt, or wilt love.
Egli amerà, he shall, or will love.
P. *Noi ameremo*, we shall, or will love.
Voi amerete, ye shall, or will love.
Eglino amerauno, they shall, or will love.

Imperative.

S. *Ama*, love thou. *Ami*, let him love.
P. *Amiamo*, let us love. *Amate*, love ye.
Amino, let them love.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io ami*, that I love, or may love.
Che tu ami, that thou loveſt, or may'ſt love.
Che egli ami, that he loveth, or may love.
P. *Che noi amiamo*, that we love, or may love.
Che voi amiate, that ye love, or may love.
Che eglino amino, that they love, or may love.

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io amerei*, I should, would, or could love.
Tu amereſti, thou should'ſt, *&c.* love.
Egli amerebbe, he should, *&c.* love.
P. *Noi ameremmo*, we should, *&c.* love.
Voi amereſte, ye should, *&c.* love.
Eglino amerebbero, they should, *&c.* love.

Second

Second Imperfect.

S. *Io amaſſi*, I loved, or I should, would, or could love.
Tu amaſſi, thou lovedſt, *&c.*
Egli amaſſe, he loved, *&c.*
P. *Noi amaſſimo*, we loved, *&c.*
Voi amaſte, ye loved, *&c.*
Eglino amaſſero, they loved, *&c.*

Preterperfect.

S. *Io abbia amato*, I have loved.
Tu abbia amato, thou haſt loved.
Egli abbia amato, he hath loved.
P. *Noi abbiamo amato*, we have loved.
Voi abbiate amato, ye have loved.
Eglino abbiano amato, they have loved.

Firſt Pluperfect.

S. *Io averei amato*, I had loved, or I should, would, or could have loved.
Tu avereſti amato, thou hadſt loved, *&c.*
Egli averebbe amato, he had loved, *&c.*
P. *Noi averemmo amato*, we had loved, *&c.*
Voi avereſte amato, ye had loved, *&c.*
Eglino averebbero amato, they had loved, *&c.*

Second Pluperfect.

S. *Io aveſſi amato*, I had loved, or I should, would, or could have loved.

Tu

Tu aveſſi amato, thou hadſt loved, *&c.*
Egli aveſſe amato, he had loved, *&c.*
P. *Noi aveſſimo amato*, we had loved, *&c.*
Voi aveſte amato, ye had loved, *&c.*
Eglino aveſſero amato, they had loved, *&c.*

Future.

S. *Io averò amato*, I ſhall have loved.
Tu averai amato, thou ſhalt have loved.
Egli averà amato, he ſhall have loved.
P. *Noi averemo amato*, we ſhall have loved.
Voi averete amato, ye ſhall have loved.
Eglino averanno amato, they ſhall have loved.

Infinitive Preſent. *Amare*, to love.
Preterperfect. *Avere amato*, to have loved.
Participle. *Amato*, loved.
Gerund. *Amando*, loving.

Coll' amare,
Con amare,
In amare,
Nell' amare,
} in loving.

Avendo amato, having loved.

The Second Conjugation in ere; *as* credere, *to believe.*

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io credo*, I believe.
Tu credi, thou believeſt.
Egli crede, he believeth.

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi credevamo*, we believed, *&c.*
Voi credevate, ye believed, *&c.*
Eglino credevano, they believed, *&c.*

Preterperfect Definite.

S. *Io credei*, or *credetti*, I believed, or did believe.
Tu credeſti, thou believedſt, *&c.*
Egli credè, he believed, *&c.*
P. *Noi credemmo*, we believed, *&c.*
Voi credeſte, ye believed, *&c.*
Eglino crederono, or *credettero*, they believed, *&c.*

Preterperfect.

S. *Io ho creduto*, I have believed.
Tu hai creduto, thou haſt believed.
Egli ha creduto, he hath believed.
P. *Noi abbiamo creduto*, we have believed.
Voi avete creduto, ye have believed.
Eglino hanno creduto, they have believed.

Firſt Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io avevo creduto*, I had believed,
Tu avevi creduto, thou hadſt believed.
Egli aveva creduto, he had believed.
P. *Noi avevamo creduto*, we had believed.
Voi avevate creduto, ye had believed.
Eglino avevano creduto, they had believed.

Second Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io ebbi creduto*, I had believed.
Tu aveſti creduto, thou hadſt believed.
Egli ebbe creduto, he had believed.
P. *Noi avemmo creduto*, we had believed.
Voi aveſte creduto, ye had believed.
Eglino ebbere creduto, they had believed.

Future.

S. *Io crederò*, I ſhall, or will believe.
Tu crederai, thou ſhalt, or wilt believe.
Egli crederà, he ſhall, or will believe.
P. *Noi crederemo*, we ſhall, or will believe.
Voi crederete, ye ſhall, or will believe.
Eglino crederanno, they ſhall, or will believe.

Imperative.

S. *Credi*, believe thou. *Creda*, let him believe.
P. *Crediamo*, let us believe. *Credete*, believe ye.
Credano, let them believe.

Conjunctive.

S. *Che io creda*, that I believe, or may believe.
Che tu creda, that thou believeſt, *&c.*
Che egli creda, that he believeth, *&c.*
P. *Che noi crediamo*, that we believe, *&c.*
Che voi crediate, that ye believe, *&c.*
Che eglino credano, that they believe, *&c.*

Firſt

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io crederei*, I should, would, or could believe.
Tu credereſti, thou should'ſt believe, *&c.*
Egli crederebbe, or *crederia*, he should believe, *&c.*
P. *Noi crederemmo*, we should believe, *&c.*
Voi credereſte, ye should believe, *&c.*
Eglino crederebbero, or *crederiano*, they should believe, *&c.*

Second Imperfect.

S. *Io credeſſi*, I believed, or should, would, or could believe.
Tu credeſſi, thou believedſt, *&c.*
Egli credeſſe, he believed, *&c.*
P. *Noi credeſſimo*, we believed, *&c.*
Voi credeſte, ye believed, *&c.*
Eglino credeſſero, they believed, *&c.*

Preterperfect.

S. *Io abbia creduto*, I have believed.
Tu abbia creduto, thou haſt believed.
Egli abbia creduto, he hath believed.
P. *Noi abbiamo creduto*, we have believed.
Voi abbiate creduto, ye have believed.
Eglino abbiano creduto, they have believed.

Firſt Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io averei creduto*, I had believed, or should, would, or could have believed.
Tu avereſti creduto, thou hadſt believed, *&c.*
Egli averebbe creduto, he had believed, *&c.*

P. *Noi averemmo creduto*, we had believed, *&c.*
Voi avereſte creduto, ye had believed, *&c.*
Eglino averebbero creduto, they had believed, *&c.*

Second Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io aveſſi creduto*, I had believed, or I should have believed.
Tu aveſſi creduto, thou hadſt believed, *&c.*
Egli aveſſe creduto, he had believed, *&c.*
P. *Noi aveſſimo creduto*, we had believed, *&c.*
Voi aveſte creduto, ye had believed, *&c.*
Eglino aveſſero creduto, they had believed, *&c.*

Future.

S. *Io averò creduto*, I shall have believed.
Tu averai creduto, thou shalt have believed.
Egli averà creduto, he shall have believed.
P. *Noi averemo creduto*, we shall have believed.
Voi averete creduto, ye shall have believed.
Eglino averanno creduto, they shall have believed.
Infinitive Preſent. *Credere*, to believe.
Preterperfect. *Avere creduto*, to have believed.
Gerund. *Credendo*, believing.
Participle. *Creduto*, believed.

The third Conjugation in ire; *as* dormire, *to sleep*.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io dormo*, I sleep. *Tu dormi*, thou sleepeſt.
Egli dorme, he sleepeth.

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi dormiamo*, we sleep.
Voi dormite, ye sleep.
Eglino dormono, they sleep.

Preterimperfect.

S. *Io dormivo*, I slept, or did sleep.
Tu dormivi, thou sleepedſt, *&c.*
Egli dormiva, he slept, *&c.*
P. *Noi dormivamo*, we slept, *&c.*
Voi dormivate, ye slep, *&c.*
Eglino dormivano, they slept, *&c.*

Preterperfect Definite.

S. *Io dormii*, I slept, or I did sleep.
Tu dormiſti, thou sleeped'ſt, *&c.*
Egli dormì, he slept, *&c.*
P. *Noi dormimmo*, we slept, *&c.*
Voi dormiſte, ye slept, *&c.*
Eglino dormirono, they slept, *&c.*

Preterperfect.

S. *Io ho dormito*, I have slept.
Tu hai dormito, thou hadſt slept.
Egli ha dormito, he hath slept.
P. *Noi abbiamo dormito*, we have slept.
Voi avete dormito, ye have slept.
Eglino hanno dormito, they have slept.

Pirſt Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io avevo dormito*, I had slept.
Tu avevi dormito, thou hadſt slept.
Egli aveva dormito, he had slept.
P. *Noi avevamo dormito*, we had slept.
Voi avevate dormito, ye had slept.
Eglino avevano dormito, they had slept.

Second Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io ebbi dormito*, I had slept.
Tu aveſti dormito, thou hadſt slept.
Egli ebbe dormito, he had slept.
P. *Noi avemmo dormito*, we had slept.
Voi aveſte dormito, ye had slept.
Eglino ebbero dormito, they had slept.

Future.

S. *Io dormirò*, I shall, or will sleep.
Tu dormirai, thou shalt, or wilt sleep.
Egli dormirà, he shall, or will sleep.
P. *Noi dormiremo*, we shall, or will sleep.
Voi dormirete, ye shall, or will sleep.
Eglino dormiranno, thsy shall, or will sleep.

Imperative.

S. *Dormi*, sleep thou.
Dorma egli, let him sleep.

P. *Dor-*

P. *Dormiamo*, let us sleep.
Dormite, sleep ye.
Dormano, let them sleep.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io dorma*, that I sleep, or I may sleep.
Che tu dorma, that thou sleepeſt, *&c.*
Che egli dorma, that he sleepeth, *&c.*
P. *Che noi dormiamo*, that we sleep, *&c.*
Che voi dormiate, that ye sleep, *&c.*
Che eglino dòrmano, that they sleep.

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io dormirei*, I should, would, or could sleep.
Tu dormireſti, thou should'ſt, *&c.* sleep.
Egli dormirebbe, he should, *&c.* sleep.
P. *Noi dormiremmo*, we should, *&c.* sleep.
Voi dormireſte, ye should, *&c.* sleep.
Eglino dormirebbero, they should, *&c.* sleep.

Second Imperfect.

S. *Io dormiſſi*, I slept, or I should, would, or could sleep.
Tu dormiſſi, thou sleepedſt, *&c.*
Egli dormiſſe, he slept, *&c.*
P. *Noi dormiſſimo*, we slept, *&c.*
Voi dormiſte, ye slept, *&c.*
Eglino dormiſſero, they slept, *&c.*

Preterperfect.

S. *Io abbia dormito*, I have slept.
Tu abbia dormito, thou haſt slept.
Egli abbia dormito, he hath slept.

P. *Noi abbiamo dormito*, we have slept.
Voi abbiate dormito, ye have slept.
Eglino abbiano dormito, they have slept.

Firſt Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io averei dormito*, I had slept, or I should, would, or could have slept.
Tu avereſti dormito, thou hadſt slept, *&c.*
Egli averebbe dormito, he had slept, *&c.*
P. *Noi averemmo dormito*, we had slept, *&c.*
Voi avereſte dormito, ye had slept, *&c.*
Eglino averebbero dormito, they had slept, *&c.*

Second Preterpluperfect.

S. *Io aveſſi dormito*, I had slept, or I should, would, or could have slept.
Tu aveſſe dormito, thou hadſt slept, *&c.*
Egli aveſſe dormito, he had slept, *&c.*
P. *Noi aveſſimo dormito*, we had slept, *&c.*
Voi aveſte dormito, ye had slept, *&c.*
Eglino aveſſero dormito, they had slept, *&c.*

Future.

S. *Io averò dormito*, I shall have slept.
Tu averai dormito, thou shalt have slept.
Egli averà dormito, he shall have slept.
P. *Noi averemo dormito*, we shall have slept.
Voi averete dormito, ye shall have slept.
Eglino averanno dormito, they shall have slept.

Infi-

Infinitive Preſent. *Dormire*, to sleep.
Preterpluperfect. *Avere dormito*, to have slept.
Gerund. *Dormendo*, sleeping.
Participle, *Dormito*, slept.

Of the Conjugation of Paſſive Verbs.

The Conjugation of Paſſive Verbs is very eaſy, and conſiſts (both in *Italian* and *English*) only in the joining the Participle Paſſive of any Verb to be conjugated, to the Auxiliary Verb *eſſere*, to be, through all its Moods, Tenſes, Numbers, and Perſons. But you muſt obſerve, that in *Italian*, the Participle varies according to the Difference of Gender and Number. Ex.

Eſſere amato, to be loved.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io ſono amato*, I am loved.
Tu ſei amato, thou art loved.
Egli è amato, he is loved.
P. *Noi ſiamo amati*, we are loved.
Voi ſete amati, ye are loved.
Eglino ſono amati, they are loved.

Imperfect. *Io ero amato*, &c.
Perfect Definite. *Io fui amato*, &c. } I was loved.
Preterperfect. *Io ſono ſtato amato*, &c. I have been loved.

First

First Pluper. *Io ero ſtato amato*, &c. } I had been
Second Pluper. *Io fui ſtato amato*, &c. } loved.
Future. *Io ſarò amato*, &c. I ſhall be loved.

After the ſame Manner are conjugated the Imperative, Conjunctive, and Infinitive Moods of the firſt Conjugation.

Note, that Verbs which end in *care*, or *gare*, take an *h* after *c* and *g*, in thoſe Tenſes where *c* and *g* come before *e* or *i*; that is to ſay, in the Preſent of the Indicative Mood, in the Future, in the Imperative, and Conjunctive Moods, and in the firſt Imperfect of the Conjunctive Mood, of which I ſhall give here two Examples.

Peccare, to ſin.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io pecco*, I ſin. *Tu pecchi*, thou ſinneſt.
Egli pecca, he ſinneſt.
P. *Noi pecchiamo*, we ſin. *Voi peccate*, ye ſin.
Eglino peccano, they ſin.

Future.

S. *Io peccherò*, I ſhall ſin.
Tu peccherai, thou ſhalt ſin.
Egli peccherà, he ſhall ſin.
P. *Noi peccheremo*, we ſhall ſin.
Voi peccherete, ye ſhall ſin.
Eglino peccheranno, they ſhall ſin.

Im-

Imperative.

S. *Pecca*, ſin thou. *Pecchi*, let him ſin.
P. *Pecchiamo*, let us ſin. *Peccate*, ſin ye.
Pecchino, let them ſin.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io pecchi*, that I ſin.
Che tu pecchi, that thou ſinneſt.
Che egli pecchi, that he ſinneth.
P. *Che noi pecchiamo*, that we ſin.
Che voi pecchiate, that ye ſin.
Che eglino pecchino, that they ſin.

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io peccherei*, I ſhould ſin.
Tu pecchereſti, thou ſhouldſt ſin.
Egli peccherebbe, he ſhould ſin.
P. *Noi peccheremmo*, he ſhould ſin.
Voi pecchereſte, ye ſhould ſin.
Eglino peccherebbero, they ſhould ſin.

Pagare, to pay.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io pago*, I pay. *Tu paghi*, thou payeſt.
Egli paga, he payeth.
P. *Noi paghiamo*, we pay. *Voi pagate*, ye pay.
Eglino pagano, they pay.

Fu-

Future.

S. *Io pagherò*, I shall pay.
Tu pagherai, thou shalt pay.
Egli pagherà, he shall pay.
P. *Noi pagheremo*, we shall pay.
Voi pagherete, or *arete*, ye shall pay.
Eglino pagheranno, they shalt pay.

Imperative.

S. *Paga*, pay thou. *Paghi*, let him pay.
P. *Paghiamo*, let us pay. *Pagate*, pay ye.
Paghino, let them pay.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io paghi*, that I pay.
Che tu paghi, that thou payeſt.
Che egli paghi, that he payeth.
P. *Che noi paghiamo*, that we pay.
Che voi paghiate, that ye pay.
Che eglino paghino, that they pay.

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io pagherei*, I should pay.
Tu pagheresti, thou shouldſt pay.
Egli pagherebbe, he should pay.
P. *Noi pagheremmo*, we should pay.
Voi paghereſte, ye should pay.
Eglino pagherebbero, they should pay.

The

The Conjugation of reflected and reciprocal Verbs.

A reflected Verb, as I have hinted before, is generally nothing but an Active Verb, whose Action returns upon the Agent that produces it; as, *Io mi levo*, I rise; *&c.* Now this Reflexion of the Action is marked with these personal Pronouns *mi*, *ti*, *si*, in the Singular; and *ci*, *vi*, *si*, in the Plural; but so, that its compound Tenses are formed with the Auxiliary *essere*.

'Tis true, that some Verbs are always reflected, and these are known by the Infinitive Mood, where the Pronoun *si* goes always after them; as, *pentirsi*, to repent; *dolersi*, to complain.

The following Example will be sufficient to learn how to conjugate any reflected Verbs

Levarsi, to rise.

Indicative Present.

S. *Io mi levo*, I rise. *Tu ti levi*, thou risest.
Egli si leva, he riseth.
P. *Noi ci leviamo*, we rise. *Voi vi levate*, we rise.
Eglino si levano, they rise.

Imperfect.

S. *Io mi levavo*, I did rise.
Tu ti levavi, thou didst rise.
Egli si levava, he did rise.

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi ci levavamo*, we did riſe.
Voi vi levavate, he did riſe.
Eglino ſi levavano, they did riſe.

Perfect Definite.

S. *Io mi levai*, I roſe, or did riſe.
Tu ti levaſti, thou roſeſt, *&c.*
Egli ſi levò, he roſe, *&c.*
P. *Noi ci levammo*, we roſe, *&c.*
Voi vi levaſte, ye roſe, *&c.*
Eglino ſi levarono, they roſe, *&c.*

Preterperfect.

S. *Io mi ſono levato*, I am riſen.
Tu ti ſei levato, thou art riſen.
Egli s'è levato, he is riſen.
P. *Noi ci ſiamo levati*, we are riſen.
Voi vi ſete levati, ye are riſen.
Eglino ſi ſono levati, they are riſen.

Firſt Pluperfect.

S. *Io m' ero levato*, I was riſen.
Tu t' eri levato, thou waſt riſen.
Egli s' era levato, he was riſen.
P. *Noi c' eramo levati*, we were riſen.
Voi v' erate levati, ye were riſen.
Eglino s' erano levati, they were riſen.

Second Pluperfect.

S. *Io mi fui levato*, I was riſen.
Tu ti foſti levato, thou waſt riſen.
Egli ſi fu levato, he was riſen,

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi ci fummo levati*, we were riſen.
Voi vi foſte levati, ye were riſen.
Eglino ſi furono levati, they were riſen.

Future.

S. *Io mi leverò*, I ſhall, or will riſe.
Tu ti leverai, thou ſhalt, or wilt riſe.
Egli ſi leverà, he ſhall, or will riſe.
P. *Noi ci leveremo*, we ſhall, or will riſe.
Voi vi leverete, ye ſhall, or will riſe.
Eglino ſi leveranno, they ſhall, or will riſe.

Imperative,

S. *Levati*, riſe thou. *Leviſi*, let him riſe.
P. *Leviamoci*, let us riſe. *Levatevi*, riſe ye.
Levinſi, let them riſe.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Ch' io mi levi*, that I riſe.
Che tu ti levi, that thou riſeſt.
Ch' egli ſi levi, that he riſeth.
P. *Che noi ci leviamo*, that we riſe.
Che voi vi leviate, that ye riſe.
Ch' eglino ſi levino, that they riſe.

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io mi leverei*, I ſhould riſe.
Tu ti leveresti, thou ſhouldſt riſe.
Egli ſi leverebbe, he ſhould riſe.

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi ci leveremmo*, we should riſe.
Voi vi levereſte, ye should riſe.
Eglino ſi leverebbero, they should riſe.

Second Imperfect.

S. *Io mi levaſſi*, I should riſe.
Tu ti levaſſi, thou shouldſt riſe.
Egli ſi levaſſe, he should riſe.
P. *Noi ci levaſſimo*, we should riſe.
Voi vi levaſte, ye should riſe.
Eglino ſi levaſſero, they should riſe.

Preterperfect.

S. *Io mi ſia levato*, I be riſen.
Tu ti ſia levato, thou be riſen.
Egli ſi ſia levato, he be riſen.
P. *Noi ci ſiamo levati*, we be riſen.
Voi vi ſiate levati, ye be riſen.
Eglino ſi ſiano levati, they be riſen.

Firſt Pluperfect.

S. *Io mi ſarei levato*, I were riſen.
Tu ti ſareſti levato, thou wert riſen.
Egli ſi ſarebbe levato, he were riſen.
P. *Noi ci ſaremmo levati*, we were riſen.
Voi vi ſareſte levati, ye were riſen.
Eglino ſi ſarebbero levati, they were riſen.

Se-

Second Pluperfect.

S. *Io mi foſſi levato*, I were riſen.
Tu ti foſſi levato, thou wert riſen.
Egli ſi foſſe levato, he were riſen.
P. *Noi ci foſſimo levati*, we were riſen.
Voi vi foſte levati, ye were riſen.
Eglino ſi foſſero levati, they were riſen.

Future.

S. *Io mi ſarò levato*, I ſhall be riſen.
Tu ti ſarai levato, thou ſhalt be riſen.
Egli ſi ſarà levato, he ſhall be riſen.
P. *Noi ci ſaremo levati*, we ſhall be riſen.
Voi vi ſarete levati, ye ſhall be riſen.
Eglino ſi ſaranno levati, they ſhall be riſen.

Infinitive Preſent. *Levarſi*, to riſe.
Preterperfect. *Eſſerſi levato*, to be riſen.
Gerund. *Levandoſi*, riſing.
Participle. *Levatoſi*, riſen.

Note, that in theſe Verbs, as in the Paſſive, the Participle varies according to the Difference of Gender and Number: So we ſay, *mi ſono levato*, for the maſculine Singular; *mi ſono levata*, for the Feminine; *ci ſiamo levati*, for the maſculine Plural; and *ci ſiamo levate*, for the Feminine.

Of Verbs Irregular.

Irregular Verbs, are thoſe whoſe Conjugation does not follow the general Rule, either by differ-

rent Terminations, or by want of ſome of their Moods, Tenſes, or Perſons.

Note, that the Verbs are irregular, ſome in the Preſent, ſome in the Definites, and ſome in the Future and Participle.

Note, alſo, that when a Verb is irregular in the Preſent of the Indicative Mood, it is alſo irregular in the Preſent of the Imperative and Conjunctive.

The Preſent of the Conjunctive is eaſily formed in the Verbs of the ſecond and third Conjugation: For, 'tis a general Rule, that all the firſt Perſons ſingular of the Indicative Mood in the Verbs, both regular and irregular, do always terminate in *o*; by changing this *o* into *a*, you'll form the Preſent of the Conjunctive; as, *vedere*, *vedo*, *veda*; *tenere*, *tengo*, *tenga*; *dormire*, *dormo*, *dorma*; *uſcire*, *eſco*, *eſca*.

The firſt and ſecond Perſons Plural of the Preſent are never irregular.

Irregular Verbs of the firſt Conjugation.

This Conjugation has only four irregular Verbs, viz. *andare*, to go; *dare*, to give; *fare*, to do; *ſtare*, to be, or ſtand.

Note, that when the Verbs are irregular in the Preſent of the Indicative Mood, they are alſo irregular in the Preſent of the Imperative and Conjunctive.

1. *An-*

1. *Andare*, to go.

This Verb is only irregular in the Preſent.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io vo*, or *vado*, I go.
Tu vai, thou goeſt.
Egli va, he goeth.
P. *Noi andiamo*, we go.
Voi andate, ye go.
Eglino vanno, they go.

Imperfect.

S. *Io andavo*, I did go, or I was going.
Tu andavi, thou didſt go, *&c.*
Egli andava, he did go, *&c.*
P. *Noi andavamo*, we did go, *&c.*
Voi andavate, ye did go, *&c.*
Eglino andavano, they did go, *&c.*

Perfect Definite.

S. *Io andai*, I went.
Tu andaſti, thou wenteſt.
Egli andò, he went.
P. *Noi andammo*, we went.
Voi andaſte, ye went.
Eglino andarono, they went,

Preterperfect.

S. *Io ſono andato*, I am gone.
Tu ſei andato, thou art gone.
Egli è andato, he is gone.
P. *Noi ſiamo andati*, we are gone.
Voi ſete andati, ye are gone.
Eglino ſono andati, they are gone.

Firſt Pluperfect.

S. *Io ero andato*, I was gone.
Tu eri andato, thou waſt gone.
Egli era andato, he was gone.
P. *Noi eramo andati*, we were gone.
Voi erate andati, ye were gone.
Eglino erano andati, they were gone.

Second Pluperfect.

S. *Io fui andato*, I was gone.
Tu foſti andato, thou waſt gone.
Egli fu andato, he was gone.
P. *Noi fummo andati*, we were gone.
Voi foſte andati, ye were gone.
Eglino furono andati, they were gone.

Future.

S. *Io anderò*, I ſhall, or will go.
Tu anderai, thou ſhalt, or wilt go.
Egli anderà, he ſhall, or will go.

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi anderemo*, we shall, or will go.
Voi anderete, ye shall or will go.
Eglino anderanno, they shall or will go.

Imperative.

S. *Va*, go thou.
Vada, let him go.
P. *Andiamo*, let us go.
Andate, go ye.
Vadano, let them go.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io vada*, that I go.
Che tu vada, that thou goeſt.
Che egli vada, that he goeth.
P. *Che noi andiamo*, that we go.
Che voi andiate, that ye go.
Che eglino vadano, that they go.

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io anderei*, I should, would, or could go.
Tu andereſti, thou should'ſt, *&c.* go.
Egli anderebbe, he should, *&c.* go.
P. *Noi anderemmo*, we should', *&c.* go.
Voi andereſte, ye should, *&c.* go.
Eglino anderebbero, they should, *&c.* go.

Second Imperfect.

S. *Che io andaſſi*, that I ſhould, would, or could go.
Che tu andaſſi, that thou ſhouldſt, *&c.* go.
Che egli andaſſe, that he ſhould, *&c.* go.
P. *Che noi andaſſimo*, that we ſhould, *&c.* go.
Che voi andaſte, that ye ſhould, *&c.* go.
Che eglino andaſſero, that they ſhould, *&c.* go.

Preterperfect.

S. *Che io ſia andato*, that I be gone.
Che tu ſia andato, that thou be gone.
Che egli ſia andato, that he be gone.
P. *Che noi ſiamo andati*, that we be gone.
Che voi ſiate andati, that ye be gone.
Che eglino ſiano andati, that they be gone.

Firſt Pluperfect.

S. *Io ſarei andato*, I ſhould, would, or could be gone.
Tu ſareſti andato, thou ſhouldſt, *&c.* be gone,
Egli ſarebbe andato, he ſhould, *&c.* be gone,
P. *Noi ſaremmo andati*, we ſhould, *&c.* be gone.
Voi ſareſte andati, ye ſhould, *&c.* be gone.
Eglino ſarebbero andati, they ſhould, *&c.* be gone.

Second Pluperfect.

S. *Che io foſſi andato*, that I were gone.
Che tu foſſi andato, that thou wert gone.
Che egli foſſe andato, that he were gone.

P. *Che*

P. *Che noi foſſimo andati*, that we were gone.
Che voi foſte andati, that ye were gone.
Che eglino foſſero andati, that they were gone.

Future.

S. *Io ſarò andato*, I ſhall be gone.
Tu ſarai andato, thou ſhalt be gone.
Egli ſarà andato, he ſhall be gone.
P. *Noi ſaremo andati*, we ſhall be gone.
Voi ſarete andati, ye ſhall be gone.
Eglino ſaranno andati, they ſhall be gone.

Infinitive Preſent.

Andare, to go.

Preterperfect.

Eſſere andato, to be gone.

Participle,

Andato, gone.

Gerund.

Andando, going.
Eſſendo andato, being gone.

Conjugation of the Verb Dare, *to give.*

Indicative Preſent.

This Verb is irregular in the Preſent and Definite Tenſes.

S. *Io do*, I give.
Tu dai, thou give.
Egli dà, he giveth.

P. *Noi diamo*, we give.
Voi date, ye give.
Eglino danno, they give.

Imperfect.

S. *Io davo*, I did give.
Tu davi, thou didſt give.
Egli dava, he did give.
P. *Noi davamo*, we did give.
Voi davate, ye did give.
Eglino davano, they did give.

Perfect Definite.

S. *Io diedi* or *detti*, I gave.
Tu deſti, thou gaveſt.
Egli diede, *diè* or *dette*, he gave.
P. *Noi demmo*, we gave.
Voi deſte, ye gave.
Eglino diedero or *dettero*, they gave.

Preterperfect.

Io ho dato, I have given.

Firſt Pluperfect.

Io avevo dato, I had given.

Second Pluperfect.

Io ebbi dato, I had given.

Fu-

Future.

S. *Io darò*, I shall or will give.
Tu darai, thou shalt or wilt give.
Egli darà, he shall or will give.
P. *Noi daremo*, we shall or will give.
Voi darete, ye shall or will give.
Eglino daranno, they shall or will give.

Imperative.

S. *Dà*, give thou. *Dia*, let him give.
P. *Diamo*, let us give. *Date*, give ye.
Diano, let them give.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io dia*, that I give or may give.
Che tu dia, that thou giveſt, *&c.*
Che egli dia, that he giveth, *&c.*
P. *Che noi diamo*, that we give, *&c.*
Che voi diate, that ye give, *&c.*
Che eglino diano, that they give, *&c.*

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io darei*, I ſhould, would, or could give,
Tu dareſti, thou ſhouldeſt, *&c.* give,
Egli darebbe, he ſhould, *&c.* give,
P. *Noi daremmo*, we ſhould, *&c.* give,
Voi dareſte, ye ſhould, *&c.* give,
Eglino darebbero, they ſhould, *&c.* give.

Se-

Second Imperfect.

S. *Che io deſſi*, that I should, would, or could give.
Che tu deſſi, that thou shouldſt, *&c.* give,
Che egli deſſe, that he should, *&c.* give,
P. *Che noi deſſimo*, that we should, *&c.* give,
Che voi deſte, that ye should, *&c.* give,
Che eglino deſſero, that they should, *&c.* give,

Preterperfect. *Io abbia dato*, I have given.
Firſt Pluperfect. *Io averei dato*, I should or would have given.
Second Pluperfect. *Io aveſſi dato*, I had given, *&c.*
Future. *Quando io averò dato*, when I shall have given.
Infinitive Preſent. *Dare*, to give.
Preterperfect. *Avere dato*, to have given.
Participle. *Dato*, given.
Gerund. *Dando*, giving.
Avendo dato, having given.

Conjugation of the Verb Fare, to do.

This Verb is irregular in the preſent, and definitive Tenſes, and in the Participle.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io fo*, I do; or I make. *Tu fai*, thou doeſt.
Egli fa, he doeth.
P. *Noi facciamo*, we do. *Voi fate*, ye do.
Eglino fanno, they do.

Im-

Imperfect.

S. *Io facevo*, I was doing.
Tu facevi, thou waſt doing.
Egli faceva, he was doing.
P. *Noi facevàmo*, we were doing.
Voi facevàte, ye were doing.
Eglino facèvano, they were doing.

Perfect Definite.

S. *Io feci*, I did. *Tu faceſti*, thou didſt.
Egli fece, he did.
P. *Noi facemmo*, we did. *Voi faceſte*, ye did.
Eglino fecero, they did.
Preterperfect. S. *Io ho fatto*, I have done, *&c.*
Firſt Pluperfect. *Io avevo fatto*, I had done, *&c.*
Second Pluperfect. *Io ebbi fatto*, I had done, *&c.*
Future. *Io farò*, I ſhall, or will do, *&c.*

Imperative.

S. *Fa*, do thou. *Faccia*, let him do.
P. *Facciamo*, let us do. *Fate*, do ye.
Facciano, let them do.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io faccia*, that I may do.
Che tu faccia, that thou may'ſt do.
Che egli faccia, that he may do.
P. *Che noi facciamo*, that we may do.
Che voi fàcciate, that ye may do.
Che eglino facciano, that they may do.

Firſt

Firſt Imperfect. *Io farei*, *&c.* I ſhould, would, or could do, *&c.*
Second Imperfect. *Io faceſſi*, *&c.* I ſhould, or might do, *&c.*
Preterperfect. *Che io abbia fatto*, *&c.* that I have done, *&c.*
Firſt Pluperfect. *Io averei fatto*, *&c.* I ſhould have done, *&c.*
Second Pluperfect. *Io aveſſi fatto*, *&c.* I had done, *&c.*
Future. *Io averò fatto*, *&c.* I ſhall have done, *&c.*
Infinitive Preſent, *Fare*, to do, or to make.
Preterperfect. *Avere fatto*, to have done.
Participle. *Fatto*, done, or made.
Gerund. *Facendo*, doing, or making.
Avendo fatto, having done, or made,

Conjugation of the Verb Stare, *to live, or to be.*

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io ſto*, I live, or I am, *&c.*
Tu ſtai, thou liveſt, *&c.*
Egli ſtai, he liveth, *&c.*
P. *Noi ſtiamo*, we live, *&c.*
Voi ſtate, ye live, *&c.*
Eglino ſtanno, they live, *&c.*

Imperfect. *Io ſtavo*, *&c.* I lived, or did live, *&c.*

Perfect

Perfect Difinite.

S. *Io ſtetti*, I lived, or I was.
Tu ſteſti, thou livedſt, *&c.*
Egli ſtette, he lived, *&c.*
P. *Noi ſtemmo*, we lived, *&c.*
Voi ſteſte, ye lived, *&c.*
Eglino ſtettero, they lived, *&c.*

Preterperfect. *Io ſono ſtato*, *&c.* I have lived, or I have been, *&c.*
Firſt Pluperfect. *Io ero ſtato*, *&c.* I had lived, or I had been, *&c.*
Second Pluperfect. *Io fui ſtato*, *&c.* I lived, or I was, *&c.*
Future. *Io ſtarò*, *&c.* I ſhall live, or I ſhall be, *&c.*

Imperativo.

S. *Sta*, live thou, or be thou.
Stia, let him live, or let him be.
P. *Stiamo*, let us live, or let us be.
State, live ye, or be ye.
Stiano, let them live, or let them be.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io ſtia*, that I live, or that I be.
Che tu ſtia, that thou liveſt, *&c.*
Che egli ſtia, that he liveth, *&c.*

P. *Che*

P. *Che noi ſtiamo*, that we live, *&c.*
Che voi ſtiate, that ye live, *&c.*
Che eglino ſtiano, that they live, *&c.*

Firſt Imperfect. *Io ſtarei*, *&c.* I should live, or I should be, *&c.*

Second Imperfect.

S. *Io ſteſſi*, I lived, or I was.
Tu ſteſſi, thou livedſt, *&c.*
Egli ſteſſe, *&c.* he lived, *&c.*
P. *Noi ſteſſimo*, we lived, *&c.*
Voi ſteſte, ye lived, *&c.*
Eglino ſteſſero, they lived, *&c.*
Preterpluperfect. *Che io ſia ſtato*, *&c.* that I have lived, *&c.*
Firſt Pluperfect. *Io ſarei ſtato*, *&c.* I should have lived, or I should have been, *&c.*
Second Pluperfect. *Io foſſi ſtato*, *&c.* I had lived, or I had been, *&c.*
Future. *Io ſarò ſtato*, *&c.* I shall have lived, or I shall have been, *&c.*
Infinitive. *Stare*, to live, or to be.
Participle Preſent. *Stato*, lived, or been.
Preterperfect. *Eſſere ſtato*, to have lived, or to have been.
Gerund. *Stando*, living, or being.
Eſſendo ſtato, having lived, or having been.

Obſer-

Obſervations upon the four irregular Verbs in are.

In theſe four Verbs, the ſecond Perſon of the preſent of the Indicative Mood terminates in *ai*, *dai*, *fai*, *vai*, *ſtai*; and the third Plural in *anno*, *danno*, *fanno*, *vanno*, *ſtanno*; and not in *ano*, as in the other Verbs of the firſt Conjugation.

The future doth not terminate in *erò*, but in *arò*; therefore you muſt ſay *darò*, *farò*, *ſtarò*; and not *derò*, *ferò*, *ſterò*; except *andare*, that makes *anderò*.

Stare and *Dare* make *deſſi*, and *ſteſſi*, in the Conjunctive, and not *daſſi*, and *ſtaſſi*.

The third Perſons ſingular of theſe four Verbs end in *a*, in the Preſent of the Conjunctive, *dia*, *ſtia*, *vada*, *faccia*; whereas the other Verbs of the firſt Conjugation end in *i*.

Although the Verb *Fare*, and its Compounds *Disfare*, to undo; *rifare*, to do again; *contrafare*, to counterfeit; *ſoprafare*, to outdo, *&c.* are placed among the irregular Verbs of the firſt Conjugation, they are nevertheleſs of the ſecond Conjugation; ſince they are nothing elſe but an Abbreviation of the Verb *Facere*: one may ſee it by the Syllable *ce*, which is in almoſt all its Tenſes; as *facevo*, *faceſſi*; which Syllables are taken out of the *Latin* Verb *Facere*. Moreover, if they were of the firſt Conjugation, the Imperfect ought to be *faciava*, or *fava*, and not *faceva*.

The

The Participle *fatto*, confirms ſtill what I have ſaid; for it is certain that all the Participles of the firſt Conjugation are terminated in *ato*, and not in *atto*.

Antiently the Verb *Andare* was uſed as a regular Verb; ſaying, *io ando*, *tu andi*, &c.

Or vo'che ſappi innanzi, che tu andi. Dante. Inf. 4.

But in Proceſs of Time, theſe Tenſes are grown obſolete; and we have taken them of the *Latin* Verb *Vadere*.

We find very ſeldom in Proſe *vado*, inſtead of *vo;* but 'tis very frequent in Verſe.

Note, That after the Verb *Andare*, and other Verbs of Motion, we always put the Particle *a* or *ad* before an Infinitive; ex. *andate a vedere*, go to ſee; *andiamo a dormire*, let us go to ſleep. *Andare*, before ſome Gerunds, expreſſes the Action with more Grace, and with more Strength, than the Verb of the Gerund would; ex. *Io vo cercando*, *io vo cogliendo*, I am looking, I am gathering, are more emphatick than *Io cerco*, *io coglio*, I look for, I gather. We uſe the Verb *ſtare*, to mark an Action of Reſt, by putting the Verb that follows in the Gerund, or in the Infinitive, with the Particles *a* or *ad;* ex. *ſcrivo*, *ſto ſcrivendo*, or *ſto a ſcrivere*, I write, or I am writing; *dorme*, *ſta dormendo*, or *ſta a dormire*, he ſleeps, or he is ſleeping.

Of

Of the irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

The greateſt part of the Verbs of the Second Conjugation are irregular; therefore I think that is better to learn them by Practice, than to get them by heart; ſince I have taken a particular Care to mark them in my Dictionary, and in which Tenſes they are irregular: However, I ſhall produce here ſome that are more frequent in Converſation.

Note, That the greateſt Difficulty of theſe Verbs conſiſts in the Definite Tenſe, and in the Participle, ſince all the other Tenſes are regular; and notwithſtanding they are irregular, inſomuch that they have no Affinity one with another in their Terminations, yet they are regular among themſelves, ſince their Irregularity lies in the ſame Perſons, *viz.* in the firſt, third Singular, and third Plural; the ſecond Perſon ſingular, the firſt and ſecond plural are always regular; that is to ſay, they are formed of the infinitive Mood; ex; *vedere*, to ſee, is irregular in the Definite Tenſe, and makes *vidi*, I ſaw, *vedeſti*, thou ſaweſt, *vide*, he ſaw, *vedemmo*, we ſaw, *vedeſte*, ye ſaw, *videro*, they ſaw. By the foregoing Example you may ſee, that *vidi*, *vide*, *videro*, are irregular, and *vedeſti*, *vedemmo*, and *vedeſte*, are regular; *piacqui*, I pleaſed, *piacque*, he pleaſed, *piacquero*, they pleaſed,

ſed, are irregular; *piaceſti*, thou pleaſed'ſt, *piacemmo*, we pleaſed, *piaceſte*, ye pleaſed, are regular: The ſame Rule is to be obſerved for the other irregular Verbs, that have defferent Terminations in the Definite Tenſe.

Note alſo, That of the irregular Verbs in *ere*, Part have the Penultima, or the laſt Syllable but one, long; as *cadere*, to fall; Part have their Termination short; as *ſcrivere*, to write.

There are only two and twenty Verbs that have the Infinitive in *ere long*, *viz.* theſe following.

Infinitive.	*Preſ.*	*Defin.*	*Part.*
Cadere, to fall.	cado,	caddi,	caduto.
Calere, to care.	an imperſonal Verb.		
Dovere, to owe.	devo,	dovei	dovuto
Capere, to hold.	a Verb obſolete.		
Dolere, to pain.	doglio,	dolſi,	doluto.
Giacere, to lie down.	giaccio,	giacqui,	giaciuto.
Godere, to rejoice,	godo,	godei,	goduto.
Avere, to have.	ho,	ebbi,	avuto.
Parere, to ſeem.	pajo,	parvi,	parſo.
Piacere, to pleaſe.	piaccio,	piacqui,	piaciuto.
Perſuadere, to perſuade.	perſuado,	perſuaſi,	perſuaſo.
Potere, to be able.	poſſo,	potei,	potuto.
Rimanere, to remain.	rimango,	rimaſi,	rimaſo.
Sapere, to know.	ſo,	ſeppi,	ſaputo.
Sedere, to ſit.	ſedo,	ſedei,	ſeduto.
Solere, to be wont,	ſoglio,		ſolito.
Tacere, to be ſilent.	taccio,	tacqui,	taciuto.
Tenere, to hold.	tengo,	tenni,	tenuto.

Temere

Temere, to fear.	temo,	temei,	temuto.
Valere, to ſignify.	vaglio,	valſi,	valuto.
Vedere, to ſee.	vedo,	vidi,	veduto.
Volere, to be willing.	voglio,	volli,	voluto.

Of theſe two and twenty Verbs, three are regular, *viz. temere*, *godere*, *ſedere*, and are conjugated like *credere*.

The others, ſome are irregular in the Preſent, ſome in the Definite and Future, and ſome in the Participle.

Of the Conjugation of Verbs in ere long.

Piacere, to pleaſe.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io piaccio*. I pleaſe.
Tu piaci, thou pleaſeſt.
Egli piace, he pleaſeth.
P. *Noi piacciamo*, we pleaſe.
Voi piacete, ye pleaſe.
Eglino piacciono, they pleaſe.
Imperfect. *Io piacevo*, *&c.* I pleaſed, or I did pleaſe, *&c.*

Definite.

S. *Io piacqui*, I pleaſed.
Tu piaceſti, thou pleaſedſt.
Egli piacque, he pleaſed.

P. *Noi piacemmo*, we pleaſed.
Voi piaceſte, ye pleaſed.
Eglino piacquero, they pleaſed.

Preterperfect. *Io ho piaciuto*, I have pleaſed.
Firſt Pluperfect. *Io avevo* } *Piaciuto*, I had plea-
Second Pluperfect. *Io ebbi* } ſed.
Future. *Io piacerò* ſhall pleaſe, *&c.*

Imperative.

S. *Piaci*, pleaſe thou.
Piaccia, let him pleaſe.
P. *Piacciamo*, let us pleaſe.
Piacete, pleaſe ye.
Piacciano, let them pleaſe.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io piaccia*, that I pleaſe, *&c.*
Che tu piaccia, that thou pleaſeſt.
Che egli piaccia, that he pleaſeth.
P. *Che noi piacciamo*, that we pleaſe.
Che voi piacciate, that ye pleaſe.
Che eglino piacciano, that they pleaſe.
Firſt Imperfect. *Io piacerei*, I ſhould pleaſe, *&c.*
Second Imperfect. *Io piaceſſi*, I pleaſed, *&c.*
Preterperfect. *Io abbia piaciuto*, I have pleaſed, *&c.*
Firſt Pluperfect. *Io averei* } *Piaciuto*, I had plea-
Second Pluperfect. *Io aveſſi* } ſed, *&c.*

Futu-

Future. *Io averò piaciuto*, I ſhall have pleaſed, *&c.*
Infinitive Preſent. *Piacere*, to pleaſe.
Preterperfect. *Avere piaciuto*, to have pleaſed.
Participle. *Piaciuto*, pleaſed.
Gerund. *Piacendo*, pleaſing.

After the ſame manner conjugate *Giacere*, to lie down; *Tacere*, to be ſilent.

Note, That in theſe three Verbs, where the Letter *c* comes before the two Vowels, the *c* is to be doubled; as *giaccio*, *piaccia*, *piacciamo*, *taccio*, *taccia*, *tacciamo*.

Cadere, to fall.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io cado*, I fall.
Tu cadi, thou falleſt.
Egli cade, he falleth.
P. *Noi cadiamo*, we fall.
Voi cadete, ye fall.
Eglino cadono, they fall.
Imperfect. *Io Cadevo*, I fell, or I did fall, *&c.*

Definite.

S. *Io caddi*, I fell.
Tu cadeſti, thou felleſt.
Egli cadde, he fell.
P. *Noi cademmo*, we fell.
Voi cadeſte, ye fell.
Eglino caddero, they fell.

Preterperfect. *Io ſono caduto*, &c. I have fallen, *&c.*
First Pluperfect. *Io ero* } *Caduto*, I had fal-
Second Pluperfect. *Io fui* } len, *&c.*
Future. *Io caderò*, or *cadrò*, I shall fall, *&c.*

Imperative.

S. *Cadi*, fall thou.
Cada, let him fall.
P. *Cadiamo*, let us fall.
Cadete, fall ye.
Cadano, let them fall.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io cada*, that I fall, *&c.*
Che tu cada, that thou falleſt, *&c.*
Che egli cada, that he falleth, *&c.*
P. *Che noi cadiamo*, that we fall, *&c.*
Che voi cadiate, that ye fall, *&c.*
Che eglino cadano, that they fall, *&c.*
First Pluperfect. *Io caderei*, I ſhould fall, *&c.*
Second Imperfect. *Io cadeſſi* I fell, or I ſhould fall.
Preterperfect. *Io ſia caduto*, I have fallen.
First Imperfect. *Io ſarei* } *Caduto*, I had fallen.
Second Pluperfect. *Io foſſi* }
Future. *Io ſarò caduto*, I ſhall have fallen.
Infinitive Preſent. *Cadere*, to fall.
Preterperfect. *Eſſere caduto*, to have fallen.
Participle. *Caduto*, fallen.
Gerund. *Cadendo*, falling.

Volere,

Volere, to be willing.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io voglio*, I am
Tu vuoi, thou art
Egli vuole, he is
} willing.

P. *Noi vogliamo*, we are
Voi volete, ye are
Eglino vogliono, they are
} willing.

Imperfect. *Io volevo*, *&c.* I was willing, *&c.*

Definite.

S. *Io volli*, I was
Tu voleſti, thou waſt
Egli volle, he was
} willing.

P. *Noi volemmo*, we were
Voi voleſte, ye were
Eglino vollero, they were
} willing.

Preterfect. *Io ho voluto*, *&c.* I have been willing, *&c.*

Firſt Pluperfect. *Io avevo*
Second Plaperfect. *Io ebbi*
} *Voluto*, I had been willing.

Future.

S. *Io vorrò*, I ſhall
Tu vorrai, thou ſhalt
Egli vorrà, he ſhall
} be willing.

P. *Noi vorremo*, we ſhall
Voi vorrete, ye ſhall
Eglino vorranno, they ſhall
} be willing.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io voglia*, that I
Che tu voglia, that thou
Che egli voglia, that he
P. *Che noi vogliamo*, that we
Che voi vogliate, that ye
Che eglino vogliano, that they
} be willing.

Firſt Imperfect. *Io vorrei*, I should be willing, *&c.*
Second Imperfect. *Io voleſſi*, I would, or I should be willing, *&c.*
Preterperfect. *Io abbia voluto*, I have been willing, *&c.*
Firſt Pluperfect. *Io averei* } *voluto*, I had been
Second Pluperfect. *Io aveſſi* } willing, *&c.*
Future. *Io averò voluto*, I shall have been willing, *&c.*
Infinitive Preſent. *Volere*, to be willing.
Preterperfect. *Avere voluto*, to have been willing.
Participle. *Voluto*, been willing.
Gerund. *Volendo*, being willing.

Dolere, to grieve.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io mi dolgo*, or *doglio*, I grieve.
Tu ti duoli, thou grieveſt.
Egli ſi duole, he grieveth.

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi ci dogliamo*, we grieve.
Voi vi dolete, ye grieve.
Eglino ſi dolgono, or *dogliono*, they drieve.
Imperfect. *Io mi dolevo*, I grieved, or did grieve.

Definite.

S. *Io mi dolſi*, I grieved.
Tu ti doleſti, thou grievedſt.
Egli ſi dolſe, he grieved.
P. *Noi ci dolemmo*, we grieved.
Voi vi doleſte, ye grieved.
Eglino ſi dolſero, they grieved.
Preterperfect. *Io mi ſono doluto*, I have grieved.
Firſt Pluperfect, *Io mi ero* } *Doluto*, I had
Second Pluperfect. *Io mi fui* } grieved.

Future.

S. *Io mi dorrò*, I ſhall or will
Tu ti dorrai, thou ſhalt, *&c.*
Egli ſi dorrà, he ſhall, *&c.*
P. *Noi ci dorremo*, we ſhall, *&c.*
Voi vi dorrete, ye ſhall, *&c.*
Eglino ſi dorranno, they ſhall, *&c.*
} grieve.

Imperative.

S. *Duolti*, or *Duoliti*, grieve thou.
Dolgaſi, let him grieve.
P. *Dogliamoci*, let us grieve.
Doletevi, grieve ye.
Dolganſi, let them grieve.

Con-

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io mi dolga*, that I grieve.
Che tu ti dolga, that thou grieveſt.
Che egli ſi dolga, that he grieveth.
P. *Che noi ci dogliamo*, that we
Che voi vi dogliate, that ye
Che eglino ſi dolgano, that they } grieve.

Firſt Imperfect. *Io mi dorrei*, I ſhould grieve, *&c.*
Second Imperfect. *Io mi doleſſi*, I grieved, *&c.*
Preterperfect. *Io mi ſia doluto*, I have grieved, *&c.*
Firſt Pluperfect. *Io mi ſarei* } *Doluto*, I had
Second Pluperfect. *Io mi foſſi* } grieved.
Future. *Io mi ſarò doluto*, I ſhall have grieved.

Infinitive Preſent.

Dolerſi, to grieve.
Preterperfect. *Eſſerſi doluto*, to have grieved.
Participle. *Doluto*, grieved.
Gerund. *Dolendoſi*, grieving.

Note, That the Verbs whoſe Infinitive end in *lere*, always take a *g* before the *l*, and after the *l* an *i*, in thoſe Tenſes where the Letters *o* and *a* follow the l; as, *voglio*, *vogliono*, *voglia*; *ſoglio*, *ſogliono*, *ſoglia*: *Dolete* makes *dolgo* and *doglio*. And in the future and firſt Imperfect, they change the *le* into *r*; ar, *volere*, *vorrò*, *vorrei*; *dolere*, *dorrò*, *dorrei*.

So-

Solere, to be wont.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io ſoglio*, I am wont.
Tu ſuoli, thou art wont.
Egli ſuole, he is wont.
P. *Noi ſogliamo*, we are wont.
Voi ſolete, ye are wont.
Eglino ſogliono, they are wont.
Imperfect. *Io ſolevo*, I was wont, *&c.*
This Verb has no definite Tenſe, nor future.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io ſoglia*, that I be
Che tu ſoglia, thou be
Che egli ſoglia, he be
P. *Che noi ſogliamo*, we be
Che voi ſogliate, ye be
Che eglino ſogliano, they be
} wont.

Second Imperfect. *Io ſoleſſi*, I was wont, *&c.*
Infinitive Preſent. *Solere*, to be wont.
Preterperfect. *Eſſere ſolito*, to be wont.
Participle. *Solito*, wont.
Gerund. *Solendo*, or *eſſendo ſolito*, being wont.

Tenere, to hold.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io tengo*, I hold. *Tu tieni*, thou holdeſt.
Egli tiene, he holdeth.

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi teniamo*, we hold.
Voi tenete, ye hold.
Eglino tengono, they hold.
Imperfect. *Io tenevo*, I held.

Definite.

S. *Io tenni*, I held. *Tu teneſti*, thou heldeſt.
Egli tenne, he held.
P. *Noi tenemmo*, we held. *Voi teneſte*, ye held.
Eglino tennero, they held.

Future.

S. *Io terrò*, I shall
Tu terrai, thou shalt
Egli terrà, he shall
P. *Noi terremo*, we shall
Voi terrete, ye shall
Eglino terranno, they shall } hold.

Imperative.

S. *Tieni*, hold thou. *Tenga*, let him hold.
P. *Teniamo*, let us hold. *Tenete*, hold ye.
Tengano, let them hold.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io tenga*, that I
Che tu tenga, that thou
Che egli tenga, that he
P. *Che noi teniamo*, that we
Che voi teniate, that ye
Che egli tengano, that they } hold.

Firſt

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io terrei*, I should
Tu terreſti, thou ſhouldſt, *&c.*
Egli terrebbe, he ſhould, *&c.*
P. *Noi terremmo*, we ſhould, *&c.*
Voi terreſte, ye ſhould, *&c.*
Eglino terrebbero, they ſhould. } hold.

Second Imperfect.

S. *Io teneſſi*, I held.
Tu teneſſi, thou heldeſt.
Egli teneſſe, he
P. *Noi teneſſimo*, we
Voi teneſte, ye
Eglino teneſſero, they } held.

Infinitive Preſent. *Tenere*, to hold.
Preterperfect. *Avere tenuto*, to have held.
Participle. *Tenuto*, held.
Gerund. *Tenendo*, holding.

Sapere, to know.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io ſo*, I know.
Tu ſai, thou knoweſt.
Egli ſa, he knoweth.
P. *Noi ſappiamo*, we know.
Voi ſapete, ye know.
Eglino ſanno, they know.
Imperfect. *Io ſapevo*, I did know, *&c*

De-

Definite.

S. *Io ſeppi*, I knew.
Tu ſapeſti, thou kneweſt.
Egli ſeppe, he knew.
P. *Noi ſapemmo*, we knew.
Voi ſapeſte, ye knew.
Eglino ſeppero, they knew.

Future.

S. *Io ſaprò*, I shall,
Tu ſaprai, thou shalt
Egli ſaprà, he shall
P. *Noi ſapremo*, we shall
Voi ſaprete, ye shall
Eglino ſapranno, they shall
} know.

Imperative.

S. *Sappi*, Know thou.
Sappia, let him know.
P. *Sappiamo*, let us know.
Sappiate, know ye.
Sappiano, let them know.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io ſappia*, that I know.
Che tu ſappia, that thou knoweſt.
Che egli ſappia, that he knoweth.
P. *Che noi ſappiamo*, that he
Che voi ſappiate, that ye
Che eglino ſappiano, that they
} know.

Firſt

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io ſaprei*, I should
Tu ſapreſti, thou ſhouldeſt
Egli ſaprebbe, he ſhould
P. *Noi ſapremmo*, we ſhould
Voi ſapreſte, ye ſhould
Eglino ſaprebbero, they ſhould
} know.

Second Imperfect.

S. *Io ſapeſſi*, I might
Tu ſapeſſi, thou mightſt
Egli ſapeſſe, he might
P. *Noi ſapeſſimo*, we might
Voi ſapeſte, ye might
Eglino ſapeſſero, they might
} know.

Infinitive Preſent. *Sapere*, to know.
Preterperfect. *Avere ſaputo*, to have known.
Participle. *Saputo*, known.
Gerund. *Sapendo*, knowing.

Potere, to be able.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io poſſo*, I am
Tu puoi, thou art
Egli può, he is
P. *Noi poſſiamo*, or *potiamo*, we are
Voi potete, ye are
Eglino poſſono they are
} able.

Imperfect. *Io potevo*, I was able, *&c.*

De-

Definite.

S. *Io potei*, or *potetti*, I could.
Tu poteſti, thou couldeſt.
Egli potè, *or potette*, he
P. *Noi potemmo*, we
Voi poteſte, ye
Eglino petettero, or *poterono*, they } could.

Future. *Io potrò*, I ſhall be able, *&c.*

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io poſſa*, that I can.
Che tu poſſa, that thou canſt.
Che egli poſſa, that he
P. *Che noi poſſiamo*, that we
Che voi poſſiate, that ye
Che eglino poſſano, that they } can.

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io potrei*, I could.
Tu potreſti, thou couldeſt.
Egli potrebbe, he
P. *Noi potremmo*, we
Voi potreſte, ye
Eglino potrebbero, they } could.

Se-

Second Imperfect.

S. *Io poteſſi*, I could.
Tu poteſſi, thou couldeſt.
Egli poteſſe, he
P. *Noi poteſſimo*, we
Voi poteſte, ye
Eglino poteſſero, they } could.

Infinitive Preſent. *Potere*, to be able.
Preterperfect. *Avere potuto*, to have been able.
Participle, *Potuto*, been able.
Gerund. *Potendo*, being able.

Rimanere, to remain.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io rimango*, I remain.
Tu rimani, thou remaineſt.
Egli rimane, he remaineth.
P. *Noi rimaniamo*, we
Voi rimanete, ye
Eglino rimangono, they } remain.

Imperfect. *Io rimanevo*, I remained, or did remain, *&c.*

Definite.

S. *Io rimaſi*, I remained.
Tu rimaneſti, thou remainedſt.
Egli rimaſe, he
P. *Noi rimanemmo*, we
Voi rimaneſte, ye
Eglino rimaſero, they } remained.

Future.

S. *Io rimarrò*, I shall
Tu rimarrai, thou shalt
Egli rimarrà, he shall
P. *Noi rimarremo*, we shall
Voi rimarrete, ye shall
Eglino rimarranno, they shall } remain.

Imperative.

S. *Rimani*, remain thou.
Rimanga, let him remain.
P. *Rimaniamo*, let us remain.
Rimanete, remain ye.
Rimangano, let them remain.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io rimanga*, that I
Che tu rimanga, that thou
Che egli rimanga, that he
P. *Che noi rimaniamo*, that we
Che voi rimaniate, that ye
Che eglino rimangano, that they } remain.

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io rimarrei*, I should remain.
Tu rimarreſti, thou ſhouldſt remain.
Egli rimarrebbe, he
P. *Noi rimarremmo*, we
Voi rimarreſte, ye
Eglino rimarrebbero, they } ſhould remain.

Second

Second Imperfect.

S. *Io rimaneſſi*, I remained.
Tu rimaneſſi, thou remainedſt.
Egli rimaneſſe, he
P. *Noi rimaneſſimo*, we
Voi rimaneſte, ye
Eglino rimaneſſero, they } remained.

Infinitive Preſent. *Rimanere*, to remain.
Preterperfect. *Eſſere rimaſo*, to have remained.
Participle. *Rimaſo*, or *rimaſto*, remained.
Gerund. *Rimanendo*, remaining.

Parere, to ſeem.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io pajo*, I ſeem.
Tu pari, thou ſeemeſt.
Egli pare, he ſeemeth.
P. *Noi pajamo*, we
Voi parete, ye
Eglino pajono, they } ſeem.

Imperfect. *Io parevo*, I ſeemed, or I did ſeem, *&c.*

Definite.

S. *Io parvi*, I ſeemed.
Tu pareſti, thou ſeemedſt.
Egli parve, he
P. *Noi paremmo*, we
Voi pareſte, ye
Eglino parvero, they } ſeemed.

Future.

S. *Io parrò*, I will
Tu parrai, thou wilt
Egli parrà, he will
P. *Noi parremo*, we will
Voi parrete, ye will
Eglino parranno, they will } ſeem.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io paja*, that I may
Che tu paja, that thou may'ſt } ſeem.
Che egli paja, that he
P. *Che noi pajamo*, that we
Che voi pajate, that ye
Che eglino pajano, that they } may ſeem.

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io parrei*, I ſhould ſeem.
Tu parreſti, thou ſhouldeſt ſeem.
Egli parrebbe, he ſhould
P. *Noi parremmo*, we ſhould
Voi parreſte, ye ſhould
Eglino parrebbero, they ſhould } ſeem.

Second Imperfect.

S. *Io pareſſi*, I ſeemed.
Tu pareſſi, thou ſeemedſt.
Egli pareſſe, he
P. *Noi pareſſimo*, we
Voi pareſte, ye
Eglino pareſſero, they } ſeemed.

Infi-

Infinitive Preſent. *Parere*, to ſeem.
Preterperfect. *Eſſer parſo*, to have ſeemed.
Participle. *Parſo*, ſeemed.
Gerund. *Parendo*, ſeeming.

Dovere, to owe, or to be obliged.

Indicative Preſent.

S. Io *devo*, or *debbo*, I owe.
Tu devi, thou oweſt.
Egli deve, he oweth.
P. *Noi dobbiamo*, we
Voi dovete, ye } owe.
Eglino devono, or *debbono*, they

Imperfect. *Io dovevo*, I owed, or I did owe.
Definite. *Io dovei*, or *dovetti*, I owed, *&c.*
Future. *Io doverò*, or *dovrò*, I shall owe.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che io debba*, that I owe.
Che tu debba, that thou oweſt.
Che egli debba, that he oweth.
P. *Che noi dobbiamo*, that we
Che voi dobbiate, that ye } owe
Che eglino debbano, that they

Firſt Imperfect. *Io doverei*, or *dovrei*, I ſhould owe, *&c.*
Second Imperfect. *Io doveſſi*, I owed, *&c.*
Infinitive Preſent. *Dovere*, to owe.

Preterperfect. *Avere dovuto*, to have owed.
Participle. *Dovuto*, owed.
Gerund. *Dovendo*, owing.

Note, Verbs having the Infinitive in *nere*; where *o*, or *a*, would regularly follow the *n*, take *g* immediately after it; as, *rimanere*, makes *rimango*, *rimangono*, *rimanga*, *rimangano*; inſtead of *rimano*, &c. *Porre*, to put, *comporre*, to compoſe, follow the ſame Rule, ſince they are nothing elſe but an Abbreviation of *Ponere*, and *Componere*.

Of the irregular Verbs in ere, *ſhort.*

Of theſe ſome few are irregular in the Preſent Tenſe, the moſt part in the Perfect, ſome in the Future, and almoſt all in the Participle.
The Perfect always ends in *ſi*, or *ſſi*, the Participle in *ſo*, or *te*; but the Perfect Tenſes following are excepted.

	Preſ.	*Def.*	*Part.*
Conoſcere, to know,	conoſco,	conobbi,	conoſciuto.
Creſcere, to grow,	creſco,	crebbi,	creſciuto.
Naſcere, to be born,	naſco,	nacqui,	nato.
Nuocere, to hurt,	nuoco,	nocqui,	nociuto.
Rompere, to break,	rompo,	ruppi,	rotto.

Although this Rule is ſufficient to know all Definite Tenſes of the Verbs in *ere*, ſhort; whoever, for greater Facility, I ſhall give here

re

re an Alphabetical Table of the Terminations of their Infinitives, and of the Irregular Tenſes form'd from them.

Terminations of the Verbs in ere, *short.*

		Preſ.	*Def.*	*Part.*
1. In *cere;*	as, vincere,	vinco,	vinſi,	vinto.
2. In *dere;*	as, ardere,	ardo,	arſi,	arſo,
3. In *gere;*	as, piangere,	piango,	pianſi,	pianto.
4. In *gliere;*	as, Cogliere,	Colgo, *and* coglio,	colſi,	colto.
5. In *here;*	as, trahere, *or* trarre,	trao,	traſſi,	tratto.
6. In *lere*,	as, ſvellere,	ſvello ſvelſi,		ſvelto.
7. In *mere;*	as, imprimere,	imprimo,	impreſſi,	impreſſo.
8. In *nere;*	as, ponere,	pongo,	poſi,	poſto.
9. In *ndere;*	as, prendere,	prendo,	preſi,	preſo.
10. In *pere;*	as, rompere,	rompo,	ruppi,	rotto.
11. In *rere;*	as, correre,	corro,	corſi,	corſo.
12. In *tere;*	as, mettere,	metto,	miſi,	meſſo.
13. In *vere;*	as, ſcrivere,	ſcrivo,	ſcriſſi,	ſcritto.

Change all theſe Terminations in *ſi*, you will find the Preter definite of all theſe Verbs; ex. to find the Definite Tenſe of *vincere*, *torcere*, *ardere*, *prendere*, *piangere*, *riſpondere*, change the Terminations *cere*, *dere*, *gere*, *ndere*, in *ſi*, you will find *vinſi*, *torſi*, *arſi*, *preſi*, *pianſi*, *riſpoſi*.

But to remove all Difficulties about the Termination of the Definite Tenſe, you muſt obſerve, that ſome Verbs double the *ſſ* in the Definite, ſome not; theſe following are of the firſt Sort, and all the others are of the ſecond.

Inf.	*Pref.*	*Def.*	*Part.*
Addurre, to alledge,	adduco,	addussi,	addotto.
Affiggere, to affix,	affiggo,	affissi,	affisso.
Ascrivere, to ascribe,	ascrivo,	ascrissi,	ascritto.
Attrahere, to attract,	attraho,	attrassi,	attratto.
Commovere, to move,	commovo,	commossi,	commosso.
Condurre, to conduct,	conduco,	condussi,	condotto.
Construere, to build,	construo,	construssi,	construtto.
Contrahere, to contract,	contraho,	contrassi,	contratto.
Correggere, to correct,	correggo,	corressi,	corretto.
Cuocere, to bake,	cuoco,	cossi,	cotto.
Direggere, to direct,	direggo,	diressi,	diretto.
Distrarre, to take off,	distrao,	distrassi,	distratto.
Distruggere, to destroy,	distruggo,	distrussi,	distrutto.
Eleggere, to chuse,	eleggo,	elessi,	eletto.
Erigere, to erect,	erigo,	eressi,	eretto.
Esprimere, to express,	esprimo,	espressi,	espresso.
Figgere, to thrust in,	figgo,	fissi,	fitto.
Introdure, to introduce,	introduco,	introdussi,	introdotto.
Imprimere, to print,	imprimo,	impressi,	impresso.
Indurre, to induce,	induco,	indussi,	indotto.
Leggere, to read,	leggo,	lessi,	letto.
Muovere, to move,	movo,	mossi,	mosso.
Negligere, to neglect,	negligo,	neglessi,	negletto.
Opprimere, to oppress,	opprimo,	oppressi,	oppresso.
Percuotere, to strike,	percuoto,	percossi,	percosso.
Produrre, to produce,	produco,	produssi,	prodotto.
Promovere, to promote,	promovo,	promossi,	promosso.
Proteggere, to protect,	proteggo,	protessi,	protetto.
Reggere, to govern,	reggo,	ressi,	retto.
Ridurre, to reduce,	riduco,	ridussi,	ridotto.
Riflettere, to reflect,	rifletto,	riflessi,	riflesso.
Rilucere, to shine,	riluco,	rilussi.	
Rimovere, to remove,	rimovo,	rimossi,	rimosso.

Ris-

Riſcuotere, to redeem,	riſcuoto,	riſcoſſi,	riſcoſſo.
Scrivere, to write,	ſcrivo,	ſcriſſi,	ſcritto.
Scuotere, to ſhake,	ſcuoto,	ſcoſſi,	ſcoſſo.
Sedurre, to ſeduce,	ſeduco,	ſeduſſi,	ſedotto.
Sopprimere, to ſuppreſs,	ſopprimo,	ſoppreſſi,	ſoppreſſo,
Struggere, to deſtroy,	ſtruggo,	ſtruſſi,	ſtrutto.
Succedere, to ſucceed,	ſuccedo,	ſucceſſi,	ſucceſſo.
Tradurre, to translate,	traduco,	traduſsi,	tradotto.
Trafiggere, to transfix,	trafiggo,	trafiſsi,	trafitto.
Trarre, to draw,	trao, *or* traggo,	traſsi,	tratto.
Vivere, to live,	vivo,	viſsi,	viſſuto.

To conjugate theſe Verbs with Facility, you muſt remember what I ſaid in the Beginning of the irregular Verbs in *ere*, where I noted, that the Definite Tenſe has three Perſons regular, and three irregular.

The three Perſons regular, are the ſecond Singular, the firſt and ſecond Plural; and the three Irregular, are the firſt and third Singular, and third Plural. And though this Rule be general and eaſy, yet Beginners ſometimes miſtake one Perſon for another; but the true Way not to be deceived is, to remember, that the ſecond Perſon of the Definite Tenſe of all the Verbs both regular and irregular, is formed of the Infinitive, changing *re*, in *ſti*; as, *vincere*, *vinceſti*, *ardere*, *ardeſti*, *piangere*, *piangeſti*; except only *eſſere*, that makes *foſti*.

The firſt Perſon plural is alſo formed of the Infinitive, changing *re*, in *mmo*; as, *amare*, *amammo*, *credere*, *credemmo*, *leggere*, *legemmo*, &c.

The

The ſecond Perſon plural is formed of the ſecond Singular, changing the *i* into *e*; as, *amaſti*, *amaſte*, *credeſti*, *credeſte*, *leggeſti*, *leggeſte*.

The firſt Perſon ſingular of the Irregular Verbs is always terminated in *i*; as, *leſſi*, *vinſi*, *pianſi*: changing the *i* into *e*, you will make the third Perſon ſingular, *leſſe*, *vinſe*, *pianſe*; and adding *ro* to this laſt, makes the third Plural, *leſſero*, *vinſero*, *pianſero*.

EXAMPLE.

Leſſi, *preſi*, *leſſe*, *preſe*, *leſſero*, *preſero*.
Scriſſi, *vinſi*, *ſcriſſe*, *vinſe*, *ſcriſſero*, *vinſero*.

Remember to read theſe Obſervations, they are very uſeful in conjugating the Irregular Verbs.

Note, That the Verbs ending in *ggere*, *here*, and *vere*, double the *ſ* in the Definite; and ſome in the Participle, double the *ſ*, and ſome double the *t*; as, *trahere*, *traſſi*, *tratto*; *ſcrivere*, *ſcriſſi*, *ſcritto*; *muovere*, *moſſi*, *moſſo*; *leggere*, *leſſi*, *letto*.

Theſe Rules would be ſufficient to learn to conjugate the Irregular Verbs in *ere*; however, I thought fit, for greater Facility, to explain the different Terminations more at large, by conjugating a Verb of each.

Of the Verbs in cere.

Cuocere, to bake.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io cuoco*, I bake. *Tu cuoci*, thou bakeſt.
Egli cuoce, he baketh.

P. *Noi*

P. *Noi cuociamo*, we bake. *Voi cuocete*, ye bake.
Eglino cuocono, they bake.

Imperfect. *Io cuocevo*, I baked, *&c.*

Definite.

S. *Io coſſi*, I baked.
Tu cuoceſti, thou bakedſt.
P. *Egli coſſe*, *Noi cuocemmo*, *Voi cuoceſte*, *Eglino coſſero*, } baked.
he, we, ye, they

Future. *Io cuocerò*, &c. I ſhall bake, *&c.*

Imperative.

S. *Cuoci*, bake thou. *Cuoca*, let him bake.
P. *Cuociamo*, let us bake. *Cuocete*, bake ye,
Cuocano, let them bake.

Conjunctive Preſent.

Conjunctive Preſent. *Che io cuoca*, that I bake, *&c.*
Firſt Imperfect. *Io cuocerei*, &c. I ſhould bake, *&c.*
Second Imperfect. *Io cuoceſſi*, &c. I baked, *&c.*
Infinitive. *Cuocere*, to bake.
Participle. *Cotto*, baked.
Gerund. *Cuocendo*, baking.

Conjugate in the ſame manner,

Conducere, or *Condurre* } to lead, *conduco*, *conduſſi*, *condotto.*

Ri-

Rilucere, to shine, *riluco riluſſi*, without Participle.
Torcere, to twiſt, *torco*, *torſi* *torto.*
Vincere, to win, *vinco*, *vinſi*, *vinto.*

Of the Verbs in dere.

The Verbs in *dere*, in the Definite make *ſi*, or *ſſi*, and in the Participle *ſo*, or *to*.
Ardere, to burn; *ardo*, *arſi*, *arſo.*
Chiudere, to ſhut; *chiudo*, *chiuſi*, *chiuſo.*
Chiedere, to ask; *chiedo*, *chieſi*, *chieſto.*
Perdere, to loſe; *perdo*, *perſi* or *perdei*, *perſo*, or *perduto.*
Ridere, to laugh; *ridi*, *riſi*, *riſo*,
Rodere, to gnaw; *rodo*, *roſi*, *roſo*,
Succedere, to ſucced; *ſuccedo*, *ſucceſſi*, *ſucceſſo.*
Concedere, to grant; *concedo*, *conceſſi*, *conceſſo.*

Of the Verbs in gere.

The Verbs in *gere*, in the Perfect make *ſi*, and in the Particle *to*.
Cingere, to gird; *cingo*, *cinſi*, *cinto.*
Eſtinguere, to extinguish; *eſtinguo*, *eſtinſi*, *eſtinto.*
Spingere, to thruſt; *ſpingo*, *ſpinſi*, *ſpinto.*
Ungere, to anoint; *ungo*, *unſi*, *unto.*
Porgere, to reach; *porgo*, *porſi*, *porto.*

But the Verbs in *argere*, and *ergere*, in the Participle, make *ſo*.

Spar-

Spargere, to ſpread; *ſpargo*, *ſparſi*, *ſparſo*.
Immergere, to plunge; *immergo*, *immerſi*, *immerſo*.
Sommergere, to drown; *ſommergo*, *ſommerſi*, *ſommerſo*.

Except *Ergere*, to erect; *Ergo*, *erſi*, *erto*.

Note, That the Verbs that have a Vowel before *gere*, ought to be ſpelled with two *gg*, and double the *ſ* in the Definite.
Friggere, to fry; *friggo*, *friſſi*, *fritto*.
Leggere, to read; *leggo*, *leſſi*, *letto*.

Of the Verbs in gliere.

Note, That the Verbs in *gliere*, beſides the Irregularity of the Definite, and Participle, make alſo a Contraction in the Infinitive Mood, the Future, and the firſt Imperfect; as, *cogliere*, or *corre*, to gather; Future, *corrò*; Imp. *correi*, in the Definite they make *ſi*, and in the Participle *to*.

Cogliere, or *Corre*, } to gather; *colgo* and *coglio*, *colſi*, *colto*.
Sciogliere, or *Sciorre*, } to loſe; *ſciolgo* and *ſcioglio*, *ſciolſi*, *ſciolto*.
Togliere, or *Torre*, } to take; *tolgo* and *toglio*, *tolſi*, *tolto*.

Scegliere, to chuſe, makes no Contraction in the Infinitive Mood, but is irregular, like the reſt. I ſhall conjugate *Cogliere*, that it may ſerve for an Example for all the others, that have the ſame Termination.

Indi-

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Io colgo*, or *coglio*, I gather.
Tu cogli, thou gathereſt.
Egli coglie, he gathereth,
P. *Noi cogliamo*, we
Voi cogliete, ye
Eglino colgono, or *cogliono*, they } gather.

Imperfect. *Io coglievo*, &c. I gathered, *&c.*

Definite.

S. *Io colſi*, I gathered.
Tu coglieſti, thou gatheredſt
Egli colſe, he
P. *Noi cogliemmo*, we
Voi coglieſte, ye
Eglino colſero, they } gathered.

Future.

S. *Io corrò*, I ſhall gather.
Tu corrai, thou ſhalt
Egli corrà, he
P. *Noi corremo*, we
Voi'correte, ye
Eglino corranno they } ſhall gather.

Imperat.

S. *Cogli*, gather thou.
Colga, or *coglia*, let him gather.
P. *Cogliamo*, let us gather.
Cogliete, gather ye.
Colgano, or *cogliano*, let them gather.

Con-

Conjunct.

S. *Io colga*, or *coglia*, I gather.
Tu colga, thou gathereſt.
Egli colga, he gathereth.
P. *Noi cogliamo*, we
Voi cogliate, ye
Eglino colgano, or *cogliano*, they } gather.

Firſt Imperfect.

S. *Io correi*, I ſhould gather.
Tu correſti, thou ſhouldeſt gather.
Egli correbbe, he
P. *Noi corremmo*, we
Voi correſte, ye
Eglino correbbero, they } ſhould gather.

Second Imperfect. *Io coglieſſi*, &c. I gathered, *&c.*
Infinitive. *Cogliere*, or *corre*, to gather.
Participle. *Colto*, gathered.
Gerund. *Cogliendo*, gathering.

Of the Verbs in here.

Trahere, and by Contraction *Trarre*, with its Compounds, being the only Verbs that have their Termination in *here*, in the Definite make *ſſi*, and in the Participle *tto*: But you muſt take notice, that modern Authors write *trarre*, or *traere* without *h*.

Indicative Preſent. *Trao* or *traggo*, *trai*, *trae*, *traiamo*, *traete*, *traono*, or *traggono*, I draw, *&c.*

Im-

Imperfect. *Traevo*, *traevi*, &c. I did draw, *&c.*
Definite. *Traſſi*, *traeſti*, *traſſe*, *traemmo*, *traeſte*, *traſſero*, I drew, *&c.*
Future. *Trarrò*, *trarrai*, &c. I shall draw, *&c.*
Imperative. *Trai*, *tragga*, *traiamo*, *traete*, *traggano*, draw thou, *&c*,
Conjunctive Preſent. *Che tragga*, *tragga*, *tragga*, *traiamo*, *traiate*, *traggano*, that I draw, *&c.*
Firſt Imperfect. *Trarrei*, *trarreſti*, *trarrebbe*, *trarremmo*, *trarreſte*, *trarrebbero*, I should draw.
Second Imperfect. *Traeſſi*, *traeſſi*, *traeſſe*, &. that I did draw.
Participle. *Tratto*, drawn.

Of the Verbs in lere.

Svellere, to pluck, with its Compounds, are the only Verbs in *lere*, that make *ſi*, in the Definite, and *to* in the Participle.
Preſent. *Svello*; Definite. *Svelſi*; Particip. *Svelto.*

Of the Verbs in mere.

Premere, to preſs; and *Sumere*, to take, and their Compounds, are the only irregular Verbs of this Termination.

Premo, *preſſi*, or *premei*, *premuto.*

Its Compounds in *imere*, make in the Definite *ſſi*, and in the Participle *ſſo*; as,
Opprimere, to oppreſs; *opprimo*, *oppreſſi*, *oppreſſo.*
Imprimere, to print; *imprimo*, *impreſſi*, *impreſſo.*

Su-

Sumere is not in uſe; its Compounds make *ſunſi*, *ſunto*.

Aſſumere, to aſſume; *aſſumo*, *aſſunſi*, *aſſunto*,
Conſumere, to waſte; *conſumo*, *conſunſi*, *conſumo*.

Of the Verbs in nere.

Ponere, to lay, is the only Verb that changes the *nere* into *ſi*, for the Definite, and in *ſto*, for the Participle, and makes a Contraction in the Infinitive Mood.

Note, That the Verbs whoſe Termination is in *nere*, take a *g*, where the Letters *o* or *a* would follow the *n*; that is to ſay, in all the Preſent Tenſes; and change the *ne* into *r* in the Future, and Firſt Imperfect.

Preſent. *Pongo*, *poni*, *pone*, *poniamo*, *ponete*, *pongono*, I lay, *&c.*
Imperfect. *Ponevo*, &c. I did lay, *&c.*
Definite. *Poſi*, *poneſti*, *poſe*, *ponemmo*, *poneſte*, *poſero*, I laid, *&c.*
Future. *Porrò*, *porrai*, *porrà*, &c. I ſhall lay, *&c.*
Imperat. *Poni*, *ponga*, *poniamo*, *ponete*, *pongano*, lay thou, *&c.*
Conjunctive Preſent. *Che ponga*, *a*, *a*, *poniamo*, *poniate*, *pongano*, that I lay, *&c.*
Firſt Imperfect. *Porrei*, *porreſti*, *porrebbe*, &c. I ſhould lay.
Second Imperfect. *Poneſſi*, *poneſſi*, *poneſſe*, &c. I laid.

Infinitive. *Ponere*, or *porre*, to lay.
Participle. *Poſto*, laid.
Gerund. *Ponendo*, laying.

Of the Verbs in ndere.

Change *ndere* into *ſi*, you'll form the Definite Tenſe, and into *ſto*, *uſo*, and *oſo*, you'll form the Participle.

Riſpondere, to anſwer; *riſpondo*, *riſpoſi*, *riſpoſto*.
Naſcondere, to hide; *naſcondo*, *naſcoſi*, *naſcoſto*.
Confondere, to confound; *confondo*, *confuſi*, *confuſo*.
Fondere, to melt; *fondo*, *fuſi*, *fuſo*.
Tondere, to sheer; *tondo*, *toſi*, *toſo*.

The Verbs in *endere*, make the Participle in *eſo*.

Attendere, to attend; *attendo*, *atteſi*, *atteſo*.
Prendere, to take; *prendo*, *preſi*, *preſo*.
Rendere, to render; *rendo*, *reſi*, *reſo*.

Fendere, to cleave, and *Pendere*, to hang, are regular in the Definite; *fendei* and *fendetti*, *pendei* and *pendetti*, in the Participle *fenduto* and *feſſo*, *penduto*.

The Compounds of theſe two Verbs are irregular, and make *eſi* in the Definite, and *eſo* in the Participle; as,

Difendere, to defend; *difendo*, *difeſi*, *difeſo*.
Appendere, to hang up, or on; *appendo*, *appeſi*, *appeſo*.

Of

Of the Verbs in pere.

Rompere, to break, with its Compounds, are the only Verbs of this Termination; and make in the Preſent. *Rompo*, *rompi*, *rompe*, *rompiamo*, *rompete*, *rompono*, I break, *&c.*
Imperfect. *Rompevo*, *rompevi*, &c. I did break, *&c.*
Definite. *Ruppi*, *rompeſti*, *ruppe*, *rompemmo*, *rompeſte*, *ruppero*, I broke, *&c.*
Future. *Romperò*, *romperai*, &c. I ſhall break, *&c.*
Imperative. *Rompi*, *rompa*, *rompiamo*, *rompete*, *rompano*, break thou, *&c.*
Conjunctive Preſent. *Rompa*, *a*, *a*, *rompiamo*, *rompiate*, *rompano*, that I break, *&c.*
Firſt Imperfect. *Romperei*, *romperesti*, &c. I ſhould break, *&c.*
Second Imperfect. *Rompeſſi*, *rompeſſi*, *rompeſſe*, &c. I broke. *&c.*
Infinitive. *Rompere*, to break.
Participle. *Rotto*, broken.
Gerund. *Rompendo*, breaking.

Of the Verbs in Rere.

Only *correre*, and its Compounds, are terminated in *rere*, and make *ſi* in the Definite, and *ſo* in the Participle.

Correre, to run; *corro*, *corſi*, *corſo*.
Accorrere, to run to; *accorro*, *accorſi*, *accorſo*.
Concorrere, to concur; *concorro*, *concorſi*, *concorſo*.

Of the Verbs in tere.

The Verbs in *tere*, make *ſſi* in the Definite, and *ſſo* in the Participle.

Riflettere, to reflect; *rifletto*, *rifleſſi*, *rifleſſo*.
Riſcuotere, to receive; *riſcuoto*, *riſcoſſi*, *riſcoſſo*.
Scuotere, to ſhake; *ſcuoto*, *ſcoſſi*, *ſcoſſo*.
Percuotere, to ſtrike; *percuoto*, *percoſſi*, *percoſſo*.

Mettere, to put, makes in the Definite, *miſi*, *metteſti*, *mettemmo*, *metteſte*, *miſero*; Participle, *meſſo*. *Promettere*, to promiſe, *prometto*, *promiſi*, *promeſſo*; we find ſometimes *meſſero*, *promeſſero*; but oftener in Verſe than in Proſe.

Of the Verbs in vere.

The Definite Tenſe of the Verbs in *vere*; is formed by changing *vere* into *ſſi* or *ſi*: The Participles have different Terminations.

Aſſolvere, to abſolve; *aſſolvo*, *aſſolſi* or *aſſolvei*, *aſſoluto*.
Riſolvere, to reſolve; *riſolvo*, *riſolſi* or *riſolvei*, *riſoluto*.
Muovere, to move; *muovo*, *moſſi*, *moſſo*.
Rimovere, to remove; *rimovo*, *rimoſſi*, *rimoſſo*.
Scrivere, to write; *ſcrivo*, *ſcriſſi*, *ſcritto*.
Vivere, to live; *vivo*, *viſſi*, *viſſuto*.

Note, That the Conjunctive Preſent of all the Verbs in *ere* and *ire* is formed of the firſt Perſon

Perſon of the Indicative, changing the *o* into *a*; as *vedere*, *vedo*, *veda*; *ſcrivere*, *ſcrivo*, *ſcriva*; *rendere*, *rendo*, *renda*; *dormire*, *dormo*, *dorma*; *ſentire*, *ſento*, *ſenta*; *finire*, *finiſco*, *finiſca*; except the Verbs, *eſſere*, *ſono*, *ſia*; *ſapere*, *ſo*, *ſappia*; *avere*, *ho*, *abbia*; *dovere*, *devo*, *debba*.

Of the irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

There are eight Verbs of the Third Conjugation more irregular than the others, *viz.*

Aprire, to open.	*Salire*, to go up.
Coprire, to cover.	*Udire*, to hear.
Dire, to ſay.	*Venire*, to come.
Morire, to die.	*Uſcire*, to go out.

Aprire is irregular in the Definite, where, beſides *aprii*, it makes alſo *aperſi*; and in the Participle.

Indicative Preſent. *Apro*, *apri*, *apre*, *apriamo*, *aprite*, *aprono*, I open, *&c.*
Imperfect. *Aprivo*, *aprivi*, &c. I did open, *&c.*
Definite. *Aprii* and *aperſi*, *apriſti*, *aprì* and *aperſe*, *aprimmo*, *apriſte*, *aprirono*, and *aperſero*. I opened, *&c.*
Future. *Aprirò*, *aprirai*, &c. I ſhall open, *&c.*
Imperative. *Apri*, *apra*, *apriamo*, *aprite*, *aprano*, open thou, *&c.*
Conjunctive Preſent. *Apra*, *a*, *a*, *apriamo*, *apriate*, *aprano*, that I open, *&c.*

First Imperfect. *Aprirei*, *apriresti*, &c. I should open, *&c.*

Second Imperfect. *Apriſſi*, *apriſſi*, *apriſſe*, &c. I opened, *&c.*

Infinitive. *Aprire*, to open.

Participle. *Aperto*, opened.

Gerund. *Aprendo*, opening.

Coprire, to cover, is irregular as *aprire*, and makes *coprii* and *coperſi*, and in the Participle *coperto*.

Indicative Preſent. *Copro*, *copri*, *copre*, *copriamo*, *coprite*, *coprono*, I cover, *&c.*

Imperfect. *Coprivo*, *coprivi*, &c. I did cover, *&c.*

Definite. *Coprii* and *coperſi*, *copriſti*, *coprì* and *coperſe*, *coprimmo*, *copriſte*, *coprirono* and *coperſero*, I opened, *&c.*

Future. *Coprirò*, *coprirai*, *&c.* I shall open, *&c.*

Imperative. *Copri*, *copra*, *copriamo*, *coprite*, *coprano*, cover thou, *&c.*

Conjunctive Preſent. *Che copra*, *a*, *a*, *copriamo*, *copriate*, *coprano*, that I cover, *&c.*

First Imperfect. *Coprirei*, *copriresti*, *&c.* I should cover, *&c.*

Second Imperfect. *Copriſſi*, *copriſſi*, *copriſſe*, &c. I covered, *&c.*

Infinitive. *Coprire*, to cover.

Participle. *Coperto*, covered.

Gerund. *Coprendo*, covering.

Dire,

Dire, to ſay,

Is irregular in the Preſent, the Definite, and in the Participle.

Indicative Preſent. *Dico*, *dici*, *dice*, *diciamo*, *dite*, *dicono*, I ſay, *&c.*

Imperfect. *Dicevo*, *dicevi*, &c. I did ſay, *&c.*

Definite. *Diſſi*, *diceſti*, *diſſe*, *dicemmo*, *diceſte*, *diſſero*, I ſaid, *&c.*

Future. *Dirò*, *dirai*, *&c.* I ſhall ſay, *&c.*

Imperative. *Dici*, *dica*, *diciamo*, *dite*, *dicano*, ſay thou, *&c.*

Conjunctive Preſent. *Dica*, *a*, *a*, *diciamo*, *diciate*, *dicano*, that I ſay, *&c.*

Firſt Imperfect. *Direi*, *direſti*, &c. I ſhould ſay.

Second Imperfect. *Diceſſi*, *diceſſi*, *diceſſe*, &c. I ſaid, *&c.*

Infinitive. *Dire*, to ſay.

Participle. *Detto*, ſaid.

Gerund. *Dicendo*, ſaying.

Morire, to die.

Morire is no otherwiſe irregular in the Preſent, than as it has two Terminations.

Indicative Preſent. *Moro* or *muojo*, *mori*, *more*, *moriamo* or *mojamo*, *morite*, *morono* or *muojono*, &c. I die, *&c.*

Imperfect. *Morivo*, *morivi*, &c. I did die, *&c.*

Definite. *Morii*, *moriſti*, *morì*, *morimmo*, *moriſte*, *morirono*. I died, *&c.* *Sono morto*, I am dead.

Ero } *Morto*, I was dead.
Fui }

Future. *Morirò*, or *morrò*, *morirai* or *morrai*, &c. I ſhall die, *&c.*

Imperative. *Mori*, *mora* or *moja*, *moriamo* or *muojamo*, *morite*, *morano*, or *muojano*, die thou, *&c.*

Conjunctive Preſent. *Io mora* or *moja*, *a*, *a*, *moriamo* or *muojamo*, *moriate*, *morano or muojano*, that I die, *&c.*

Firſt Imperfect. *Morirei* or *morrei*, *morireſti* or *morreſti*, &c. I ſhould die, *&c.*

Second Imperfect. *Moriſſi*, *moriſſi*, *moriſſe*, &c. I did die, *&c.*

Infinitive. *Morire*, to die.

Participle. *Morto*, dead.

Gerund. *Morendo*, dying.

Salire, to go up.

Salire is irregular as *morire*, that is to ſay, it has two Terminations in the Preſent.

Indicative Preſent. *Salgo* and *ſaglio*, *ſali*, *ſale*, *ſagliamo*, *ſalite*, *ſalgono* and *ſagliono*, I go up, *&c.*

Imperfect. *Salivo*, *ſalivi*, &c. I did go up, *&c.*

Definite. *Salii*, *ſaliſti*, *ſalì*, *ſalimmo*, *ſaliſte*, *ſalirono*, I went up, *&c.*

Future. *Salirò*, *ſalirai*, &c. I ſhall go up, *&c.*

Impe-

Imperative. *Sali*, *ſalga* or *ſaglia*, *ſagliano*, *ſalite*, *ſalgano* or *ſagliano*, go up, *&c.*
Conjunctive. *Salga*, or *Saglia*, *a*, *a*, *ſagliamo*, *ſagliate*, *ſalgano* or *ſagliano*, that I go up, *&c.*
Firſt Imperfect. *Salirei*, *ſalireſti*, I ſhould go up.
Second Imperfect. *Saliſſi*, *ſaliſſi*, *ſaliſſe*, &c. I went up, *&c.*
Infinitive. *Salire*, to go up.
Participle. *Salito*, gone up.
Gerund. *Salendo*, going up.

Udire, to hear.

Udire, is irregular only in the Preſent, changing the *u* into *o*, in the firſt, ſecond, and third Perſons ſingular, and third plural.
Indicative Preſent. *odo*, *odi*, *ode*, *udiamo*, *udite*, *odono*, I hear, *&c*,
Imperfect. *Udivo*, *udivi*, &c. I did hear, *&c.*
Definite. *Udii*, *udiſti*, *udì*, *udimmo*, *udiſte*, *udirono*, I heard, *&c.*
Future. *Udirò*, *udirai*, &c. I ſhall hear, *&c.*
Imperative. *Odi*, *oda*, *udiamo*, *udite*, *odano*, hear thou, *&c.*
Conjunctive Preſent. *Oda*, *a*, *a*, *udiamo*, *udiate*, *odano*, that I hear, *&c.*
Firſt Imperfect. *Udirei*, *udireſti*, &c. I ſhould hear, *&c.*
Second Imperfect. *Udiſſi*, *udiſſi*, *udiſſe*, &c. I heard, *&c.*

Infi-

Infinitive. *Udire*, to hear.
Participle. *Udito*, heard.
Gerund. *Udendo*, hearing.

Venire, to come.

Indicative Preſent. *Vengo*, *vieni*, *viene*, *veniamo*, *venite*, *vengono*, I come, *&c.*
Imperfect. *Venivo*, *venivi*, &c. I did come.
Definite. *Venni*, *veniſti*, *venne*, *venimmo*, *veniſte*, *vennero*, I came, *&c.*
Sono venuto, I am come.
Ero, *Fui* } *Venuto*, I was come.
Future. *Verrò*, *verrai*, *verrà*, *verremo*, *verrete*, *verrano*, I ſhall come, *&c.*
Imperative. *Vieni*, *venga*, *veniamo*, *venite*, *vengano*, come thou, *&c.*
Conjunctive Preſent, *Venga*, *a*, *a*, *veniamo*, *veniate*, *vengano*, that I come, *&c.*
Firſt Imperfect. *Io verrei*, *tu verreſti*, I ſhould come, *&c.*
Second Imperfect. *Io veniſſi*, *veniſſi*, *veniſſe*, &c. I came, *&c.*
Infinitive. *Venire*, to come.
Participle. *Venuto*, come.
Gerund. *Venendo*, coming.

Uſcire, to go out.

Uſcire is only irregular in the Preſent, changing the

the *u* into *e*, in the firſt, ſecond and third Perſons Singular, and third Plural.

Indicative Preſent. *Eſco*, *eſci*, *eſce*, *uſciamo*, *uſcite*, *eſcono*, I go out, *&c.*
Imperfect. *Uſcivo*, *uſcivi*, &c. I did go out, *&c.*
Definite. *Uſcii*, *uſciſti*, *uſcì*, *uſcimmo*, *uſciſte*, *uſcirono*, I went out, *&c.*
Sono uſcito, &c. I am gone out, *&c.*
Ero } *uſcito*, I was gone out.
Fui }
Future. *Uſcirò*, *uſcirai*, &c. I ſhall go out, *&c.*
Imperative. *Eſci*, *eſca*, *uſciamo*, *uſciate*, *eſcano*, go out, *&c.*
Conjunctive. *Eſca*, *a*, *a*, *uſciamo*, *uſciate*, *eſcano*, I go out, *&c.*
Firſt Imperfect. *Uſcirei*, *uſcireſti*, &c. I ſhould go out, *&c.*
Second Imperfect. *Uſciſſi*, *uſciſſi*, *uſciſſe*, &c. I did go out, *&c.*
Infinitive. *Uſcire*, to go out.
Participle. *Uſcito*, gone out.
Gerund. *Uſcendo*, going out.

The third Conjugation of the Verbs in *ire*, has another Kind of Verbs irregular, only in the Preſent, which are formed from the Infinitive, changing *ire* in *iſco*; as, *ardire*, *ardiſco*. I ſhall conjugate this Verb, that it may ſerve for a Rule to all the reſt.

But

But in order to give a general Rule about the irregular Verbs in *iſco*, note that the following Verbs are the only ones that do not end in *iſco*, but are conjugated like the regular Verb *dormire*. All the other Verbs in *ire*, that are not in this Collection, have their Termination in *iſco*.

Aprire, to open;	*apro*,	*aprii*,	*aperto*.
Bollire, to boil;	*bollo*,	*bollii*,	*bollito*.
Conſentire, to conſent;	*conſento*,	*conſentii*,	*conſentito*.
Coprire, to cover;	*copro*,	*coprii*,	*coperto*.
Convertire, to convert;	*converto*,	*convertii*,	*convertito*.
Cucire, to ſow;	*cucio*,	*cucii*,	*cucito*.
Dormire, to sleep;	*dormo*,	*dormii*,	*dormito*,
Fuggire, to run away;	*fuggo*,	*fuggii*,	*fuggito*.
Mentire, to lye;	*mento*,	*mentii*,	*mentito*.
Morire, to die;	*moro*,	*morii*,	*morto*.
Partire, to depart;	*parto*,	*partii*,	*partito*.
Pentirſi, to repent;	*mi pento*,	*mi pentii*,	*pentito*.
Salire, to go up;	*ſalgo*,	*ſalii*,	*ſalito*.
Seguire, to follow;	*ſeguo*,	*ſeguii*,	*ſeguito*.
Servire, to ſerve;	*ſervo*,	*ſervii*,	*ſervito*.
Soffrire, to ſuffer;	*ſoffro*,	*ſoffrii*,	*ſofferto*.
Sortire, to go out;	*ſorto*,	*ſortii*,	*ſortito*.
Veſtire, to dreſs;	*veſto*,	*veſtii*,	*veſtito*.

Note, That ſome of the Verbs in *iſco*, are irregular not only in the Preſent, but alſo in the Definite Tenſe, and in the Participle, *viz.* theſe following.

Ap-

Apparire, to appear, *appariſco*, *apparſi*, *apparſo*.
Comparire, to appear before; *Compariſco*, *comparſi*, *comparſo*.
Offerire, to offer; *offeriſco*, *offerii* and *offerſi*, *offerto*.
Inſtruire, to inſtruct; *inſtruiſco*, *inſtruſſi*, *inſtrutto*.
Proferire, to proffer; *proferiſco*, *proferii*, *proferto*.
Soffrire, to ſuffer; *ſoffro* or *ſoffriſco*, *ſoffrii*, *ſofferto*.
Sepellire, to bury; *ſepelliſco*, *ſepellii*, *ſepellito* or *ſepolto*.

Some are irregular in the Definite Tenſe, and in the Participle, and have not the Termination in *iſco*; as,

Aprire, to open; *apro*, *aprii* or *aperſi*, *aperto*.
Coprire, to cover; *copro*, *coprii* or *coperſi*, *coperto*.

Conjugation of the Verbs in iſco.

Favorire, to favour.

Indicative Preſent.

S. *Favoriſco*, I favour.
Favoriſci, thou favoureſt.
Favoriſce, he favoureth.
P. *Favoriamo*, we
Favorite, ye } favour.
Favoriſcono, they
Imperfect. *Favorivo*, *favorivi*, &c. I did favour, *&c.*
Definite. *Favorii*, *favoriſti*, *favorì*, &c. I have favoured, *&c.*
Future. *Favorirò*, *favorirai*, &c. I ſhall favour, *&c.*

Im-

Imperative.

S. *Favoriſci*, favour thou.
Favoriſca, let him favour.
P. *Favoriamo*, let us favour.
Favorite, favour ye.
Favoriſcano, let them favour.

Conjunctive Preſent.

S. *Che favoriſca*, that I favour.
Che favoriſca, that thou favoureſt.
Che favoriſca, that he favoureth.
P. *Che favoriamo*, that we
Che favoriate, that ye
Che favoriſcano, that they } favour.

Firſt Imperfect. *Favorirei*, *favoreſti*, &c. that I did favour, *&c.*
Second Imperfect. *Favoriſſi*, *favoriſſi*, *favoriſſe*, that I did favour, *&c.*
Infinitive. *Favorire*, to favour.
Participle. *Favorito*, favoured.
Gerund. *Favorendo*, favouring.

Note, That ſeveral of the Verbs in *iſco*, have two Terminations in the Preſent of the Indicative, both in Verſe and Proſe; as, *ſoffro* and *ſoffriſco*; *offro* and *offriſco*.

Others have two Terminations only in the third Perſon ſingular of the ſame Tenſe; as, *languire* makes *langue* and *languiſce*; *muggire*, *mugge* and *muggiſce*.

There

There are alſo ſome Verbs that be of two Conjugations, and have by Conſequence a double Termination; ſuch as,

Colorare and *Colorire*, to colour.
Impazzare and *impazzire*, to grow mad.
Inacerbare and *inacerbire*, to grow ſowr.
Indurare and *indurire*, to harden.
Innanimare and *innanimire*, to encourage.

Poets uſe very often the Verbs *Ire* and *Gire*, inſtead of the Verb *Andare*, to go, which are both Defectives: they are conjugated thus.

Ire, to go.

Imperfect. *Iva*, he went; *Ivano*, they went.
Imperative. *Ite*, go ye.
Participle. *Ito*, gone.

Gire, to go.

Preſent. *Gite*, ye go.
Imperfect. *Givo*, *givi*, *giva*, or *gia*, *givano*, I did go, *&c.*
Definite. *Gii*, *giſti*, *gì* or *gio*, *gimmo*, *giſte*, *girono*, I went, *&c.*
Imperative. *Gite*, go ye.

Conjunctive.

Second Imperfect. *Giſſi*, *giſſi*, *giſſe*, *giſſimo*, *giſte*, *giſſero*, I did no, *&c.*
Infinitive. *Gire*, to go.
Participle. *Gito*, gone.

Ob-

Obſervations upon the Verb Venire.

The Verb *Venire* may be joined with the Participles paſſive, to ſignify a Thing, that could be expreſſed without this Verb; ex. *gli venne veduta una donna aſſai bella*, he ſaw a very handſome Woman; where *venne veduta* is inſtead of *vide*, he ſaw. The ſame Verb *Venire*, joined with ſome Participles, takes the place of the Verb *Eſſere*; ex. *mi vien detto*, I am told; *verrà lodato*, he will be praiſed.

Of Verbs Neuter.

There are two Sorts of Verbs neuter, the one is active both in Voice and Signification; as, *io dormo*, I ſleep; *tu ſedi*, thou ſitteſt; *egli parte*, he goes; *noi andiamo*, we go. The other paſſive in Signification, and is always accompanied by the Particles *mi*, *ti*, *ſi*, *ci*, *vi*; as, *mi rallegro*, I am glad; *mi ricordo*, I remember; *egli ſi pente*, he is ſorry.

The firſt is called active, becauſe comprehending in it ſelf the Action, and the Impreſſion it produces, it governs no Noun in the Accuſative; ſuch as *andare*, *dormire*.

From this Verb one cannot form a paſſive Verb, as they do of an active Verb; and if ſometimes we join the Verb *eſſere*, to be, to the Participle of the neuter Verb, it takes then the Signification of the *Perfect Tenſe*; ex. *Io ſono amato*, I am loved, is

in

in the Preſent of the Indicative; and *io ſono andato*, I am gone, is in the Perfect.

For the ſame Reaſon the Verb Neuter never admits the Definite, or Pluperfect Tenſe of the Verb *eſſere*, which is *fui*, or *ſono ſtato*; but we ſay *io ſono andato*, and not *Io fui andato*, or *io ſono ſtato andato*.

The ſecond is called paſſive, becauſe the Action returns upon the Agent that produces it; as, *io mi levo*, I riſe; *io mi rallegro*, I rejoice; *io mi ricordo*, I remember.

It is called alſo a reciprocal Verb, for the mutual Relation there is between the Nominative of the Verb, and the Caſe governed by it; as, *Io mi rallegro*, I rejoice, it is I that rejoice, and am rejoiced; *Io mi contriſto*, I am troubled; it is I that trouble, and am troubled.

All Verbs may be changed into Neuter Paſſive, by the help of the conjunctive Pronouns *mi*, *ti*, *ſi*, *ci*, vi; *io mi amo*, I love my ſelf; *tu ti conſoli*, thou comforteſt thy ſelf, *&c.*

Neuters active are conjugated with the Verb *Avere*; as,

Ho caminato, I have walked.
Ho dovuto, I have owed.
Ho dormito, I have ſlept.
Ho ſeduto, I have ſat.

Neuters Paſſive are conjugated with the Verb *eſſere*, to be; as,

Sono andato, I went.
Sono arrivato, I arrived.
Sono accorſo, I ran unto.
Sono entrato, I entered.
Sono morto, I died.
Sono nato, I was born.
Sono partito, I went away.
Sono paſſato, I paſſed.
Sono reſtato, I ſtayed.
Sono rimaſto, I remained.
Sono ritornato, I returned.
Sono venuto, I came.
Sono uſcito, I went out.

Some Verbs are conjugated with either *Avere*, or *eſſere*; as,

Fuggire, to fly from, or shun.
Salire, to go up.
Incontrare, to meet
Scendere, to come down.

EXAMPLES.

Ho fuggito i miei nemici, I fled from my Enemies.
Son fuggito da' miei nemici, I am shunned by my Enemies.
Ho ſalito queſto monte. I went up this Mountain.
Sono ſalito a piedi, I went up a-Foot.
Ho incontrato mio fratello, I met my Brother.

Mi

Mi ſono incontrato in mio fratello, I met my Brother.

Ho ſceſo il monte, I came down the Hill.

Sono ſceſo ſolo, I came down alone.

Mi ſon fatto male, *or mi ho fatto male*, I have hurt my ſelf.

Of Verbs Impersonal.

Verbs Impersonal are ſo called, firſt, becauſe they are often uſed to expreſs natural Actions that have no Relation to any Man's Perſon; as, *gela*, it freezes; *fa caldo*, it is hot: And, ſecondly, becauſe they are conjugated by the third Perſon ſingular only.

Verbs Impersonal are of three Sorts; *viz.* 1*ſt*, thoſe that are abſolutely and properly ſuch; as. *accade*, it happens; *baſta*, it is enough; *biſogna*, one muſt; *nevica*, it ſnows. 2*dly*, Thoſe which are active or neuter Verbs, impersonally uſed by the help of the Particle *ſi*; as, *ſi ama*, they love; *ſi ſcrive*, they write; *ſi dice*, they ſay. And, 3*dly*, others which have great Affinity with reciprocal Verbs, and are conjugated with the Pronouns Conjunctive *mi*, *ti*, *gli*, or *le*, *ci*, *vi*, as, *mi duole*, *ti duole*, *gli* or *le duole*.

The Verbs abſolutely Impersonal are,

Accade, *Avviene*, } It happens.

Baſta, it is enough,

Biſogna, one muſt.

Grandina, it hails.
Nevica, it ſnows.
Pare, it ſeems.
Piove, it rains.
Lampeggia, it lightens.
Tuona, it thunders, *&c.* which are conjugated by the third Perſon Singular, through all Moods and Tenſes, according to the Conjugation they are of; as,

Nevicare, to ſnow.

Indicative, Preſent. *Nevica*, it ſnows.
Imperfect. *Nevicava*, it did ſnow.
Definite. *Nevicò*, it ſnowed.
Perfect. *Ha nevicato*, it hath ſnowed.
Firſt Pluperfect. *Aveva nevicato* } it had ſnow-
Second Pluperfect. *Ebbe nevicato*, } ed.
Future. *Nevicherà*, it will ſnow.
Imperative. *Che nevichi*, let it ſnow.
Conjunctive, Preſent. *Che nevichi*, that it ſnow.
Firſt Imperfect. *Nevicherebbe*, it would, could, or should ſnow.
Second Imperfect. *Nevicaſſe*, it ſnowed.
Perfect. *Abbia nevicato*, it hath ſnowed.
Firſt Pluperfect. *Averebbe nevicato*, } it had ſnow-
Second Pluperfect. *Aveſſe nevicato* } ed.
Future: *Averà nevicato*, it ſhall have ſnowed.
Infinitive. *Nevicare*. to ſnow; *aver nevicato*, to have ſnowed.

Par-

Participle. *Nevicato*, ſnowed.
Gerund. *Nevicando*, ſnowing.

The Participle *ſi*, that compoſes the ſecond Sort of Impersonal Verbs, is put indifferently either before, or after the Verbs; as, *ſi ama*, or *amaſi*, they love; *ſi dice*, or *diceſi*, they ſay. In this manner all active Verbs may become Impersonal. They are conjugated in *Italian* by the third Perſons ſingular and plural; as,

Amare, to love.

Indicative. *Amaſi* or *ſi ama*, *amanſi* or *ſi amano*, they love. *Amavaſi* or *ſi amava*, *amavanſi* or *ſi amavano*, *amoſſi* or *ſi amò*, *amaronsi* or *ſi amarono*, they loved. And ſo of the reſt through all Moods and Tenſes.

Biſogna, one muſt.

Indicative. *Biſogna*, *biſognava*, *biſognò*, *biſognerà*.
Conjunctive. *Che biſogni*, *biſognerebbe*, *biſognaſſe*.

This Verb is uſed ſeveral Ways in *Italian*.

Firſt, Before the Conjunctive Mood, with the Particle *Che*, which Conjunctive is rendered in *English* by the Infinitive; as *biſogna che io vada*, I muſt go; *biſogna che tu legga*, thou muſt read; *biſogna che egli mangi*, he muſt eat; *biſognerebbe che io andaſſi*, I ſhould go.

Secondly, It is uſed before the Infinitive Mood, either in an indetermimate Signification; as, *bi-*

ſogna far ciò, that muſt be done; or with theſe Perſonal Pronoun, *mi*, *ti*, *gli*, or *le*, *ci*, *vi*; as, *mi biſogna partire*; I muſt be gone; *ci biſogna aver pazienza*, we muſt have Patience; *gli biſognò laſciare i ſuoi amici*, he was forced to leave his Friends.

Thirdly, It is ſometimes uſed at the End of a Sentence, in this manner; *voi fate quel che biſogna*, you do what you should do, or what is fitting.

Fourthly, It is uſed before Subſtantives, either abſolutely, or with theſe Pronouns Perſonal, *mi*, *ti*, *gli*, or *le*, *ci*, *vi*, *loro*; but then the Verb *biſognare* agrees with the Subſtantive, and it is uſed in the third Perſon plural, if the Subſtantive be of that Number; as, *biſognano danari per fare la guerra*, Money muſt be had to make War; *mi biſogna del pane*, I muſt have Bread; *ci biſognano cavalli*, we muſt have Horſes.

How to expreſs in Italian, *there is*, *there was*, &c.

There is, in *Italian* is expreſſed two Ways, *viz.* by *c'è*, when we ſpeak of a Place where we are preſent; ex. *non c'è fuoco in queſta camera*, there is no Fire in this Room; and by *v'è*, when we ſpeak of a Place where we are not preſent; *ieri andai all'opera, ma il Re non vi fu*, Yeſterday I went to the Opera, but the King was not there.

To

To render it more eaſy, I put here the Conjugation of the Verb *eſſere*, with the Adverb *ci* and *vi*.

Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb eſſere, *to be, with the Adverbs* ci, *and* vi.

Indicative Preſent.

Near, with *ci*.	Diſtant, with *vi*.
There is, *c'è*, or *ci ſono*.	*v'è*, or *vi ſono?*
Is there? *c'è?* or *ci ſono?*	*v'è?* or *vi ſono?*
There is not, *non c'è*, or *non ci ſono*.	*non v'è*, or *non vi ſono*.
There is ſome, *cen'è*, *cene ſono*,	*ven'è*, *vene ſono*.
There is none, *non cen'è*, *non cene ſono*.	*non ven'è*, *non vene ſono*.

Imperfect.

There was, *c'era*, or *c'erano*,	*v'era*, *v'erano*.
There was not, *non c'era*, *non c'erano*.	*non v'era*, *non v'erano*.
There was ſome, *cen'era*, *cen'erano*,	*ven'era*, *ven'erano*.
There was none, *non cen'era*, *non cen'erano*.	*non ven'era*, *non ven'erano*.

Definite.

There was, *ci fu, ci furono.*	*vi fu, vi furono,*
There was not, *non ci fu, non ci furono,*	*non vi fu, non vi furono.*
There was ſome, *cene fu, cene furono.*	*vene fu, vene furono.*
There was none, *non cene fu, non cene furono.*	*non vene fu, non vene furono.*

Preterperfect.

There has been, *c'è ſtato, ci ſono ſtati.*	*v'è ſtato, vi ſono ſtati.*
There has not been, *non c'è ſtato, non ci ſono ſtati,*	*non v'è ſtato, non vi ſono ſtati.*
There has been ſome, *cen'è ſtato, cene ſono ſtati.*	*ven'è ſtato, vene ſono ſtati.*
There has been none, *non cen'è ſtato, non cene ſono ſtati.*	*non ven'è ſtato, non vene ſono ſtati.*

Pluperfect.

There had been, *c'era ſtato, c'erano ſtati,*	*v'era ſtato, v'erano ſtati.*
There had not been, *non c'era ſtato, non c'erano ſtati.*	*non v'era ſtato, non v'erano ſtati.*
There had been ſome, *cen'era ſtato, cen'erano ſtati.*	*ven'era ſtato, ven'erano ſtati.*

Futu-

Future.

There will be, *ci ſarà, ci ſaranno.*	*vi ſarà, vi ſaranno.*
There will not be, *non ci ſarà, non ci ſaranno.*	*non vi ſarà, non vi ſaranno.*
There will be ſome, *cene ſarà, cene ſaranno.*	*vene ſarà, vene ſaranno.*
There will be none, *non cene ſarà, non cene ſaranno.*	*non vene ſarà, non vene ſaranno.*

And ſo in all the other Tenſes.

CHAP. VI.

Of Participles.

A Participle is a Part of Speech, ſo called, becauſe it partakes ſomething of the Nature of a Noun, and ſomething of that of a Verb.

A Participle is twofold, *viz. Active* and *Paſſive.*

The *Participle Active*, is either Preſent, or Preter (or Paſt.) The Preſent is ſimple, and always ends in *ante*, or in *ente*; as, *amante*, *leggente*. The Participle Preter or Paſt, is compounded of the Participle Preſent of the Auxiliaries, *viz. avendo*, *eſſendo*, and the Participle Paſſive of every Verb; as, *avendo amato*, having loved; *eſſendo arrivato*, being arrived.

The

The Participle Paſſive ends in *ato* in the firſt Conjugation; as, *amato*, *portato*, *cantato*; except *fare*, that makes *fatto*.

The regular Verbs of the Second Conjugation, make their Participles in *uto*; as, *creduto*, *temuto*, *ricevuto*, *goduto*. But the Verbs irregular have different Terminations, *viz.* in

Anto;	*piango*,	*pianſi*,	*pianto*,	*piangere.*
Arſo;	*ſpargo*,	*ſparſi*,	*ſparſo*,	*ſpargere.*
Aſo;	*rimango*,	*rimaſi*,	*rimaſo*,	*rimanere.*
Ato;	*naſco*,	*nacqui*,	*nato*,	*naſcere.*
Elto;	*ſceglio*,	*ſcelſi*,	*ſcelto*,	*ſcegliere.*
Ento,	*ſpegno*,	*ſpenſi*,	*ſpento*,	*ſpegnere.*
Erſo;	*diſpergo*,	*diſperſi*,	*diſperſo*,	*diſpergere.*
Eſo;	*difendo*,	*difeſi*,	*difeſo*,	*difendere.*
Eſſo;	*metto*,	*miſi*,	*meſſo*,	*mettere.*
Eſto;	*chiedo*,	*chieſi*,	*chieſto*,	*chiedere.*
Into;	*cingo*,	*cinſi*,	*cinto*,	*cingere.*
Iſo;	*divido*,	*diviſi*,	*diviſo*,	*dividere.*
Itto;	*affliggo*,	*affliſſi*,	*afflitto*,	*affliggere.*
Iuto;	*accreſco*,	*accrebbi*,	*accreſciuto*,	*accreſcere.*
Olto;	*colgo*,	*colſi*,	*colto*,	*cogliere.*
Orſo;	*corro*,	*corſi*,	*corſo*,	*correre.*
Orto;	*accorgo*,	*accorſi*,	*accorto*,	*accorgere.*
Oſo;	*naſcondo*,	*naſcoſi*,	*naſcoſo* or *naſcoſto*,	*naſcondere.*
Oſto;	*pongo*,	*poſi*,	*poſto*,	*ponere* or *porre.*
Otto;	*cuoco*,	*coſſi*,	*cotto*,	*cuocere.*
Unto;	*giungo*,	*giunſi*,	*giunto*,	*giugnere.*
Uſo;	*chiudo*,	*chiuſi*,	*chiuſo*,	*chiudere.*
Utto;	*ſtruggo*,	*ſtruſſi*,	*ſtrutto*,	*ſtruggere.*

Note,

Note, That all theſe different Terminations are for the Verbs in *ere* short; becauſe all the Participles of the Verbs in *ere long* do terminate in *uto*; as, *ſaputo*, *bevuto*: Except theſe, *perſuaſo*, *rimaſo*, *ſolito*, *parſo*, from *perſuadere*, *rimanere*, *ſolere*, *parere*.

In order to form the Participles of the Verbs in *ere* short, you muſt obſerve what follows.

1. The Verbs in *do*, and in *ro*, make *ſi* in the Definite, and *ſo* in the Participle.

Ardo, *arſi*, *arſo*, *ardere*, to burn.
Chiudo, *chiuſi*, *chiuſo*, *chiudere*, to ſhut.
Decido, *deciſi*, *deciſo*, *decidere*, to decide.
Corro, *corſi*, *corſo*, *correre*, to run.
Scorro, *ſcorſi*, *ſcorſo*, *ſcorrere*, to run over.

2. Thoſe in *co*, *go*, *glio*, and *vo*, make *ſi* and *to*; as,

Vinco, *vinſi*, *vinto*, *vincere*, to overcome.
Cingo, *cinſi*, *cinto*, *cingere* and *cignere*, to gird.
Porgo, *porſi*, *porto*, *porgere*, to reach.
Spegno and *ſpengo*, *ſpenſi*, *ſpento*, *ſpegnere*, to extinguish.
Sorgo, *ſorſi*, *ſorto*, *ſorgere*, to riſe.
Volgo, *volſi*, *volto*, *volgere*, to turn.
Colgo, *colſi*, *colto*, *cogliere*, to gather.
Tolgo or *Toglio* } *tolſi*, *tolto*, *togliere*, to take away.

3. When the Termination of theſe Verbs is pure, that is to ſay, when there is a Vowel before *do*,

do, *co*, *go*, *glio*, &c. the *ſ* is doubled in the Definite, and by Conſequence the *ſ* or the *t* in the Participle; as,

Concedo, *conceſſi*, *conceſſo*, *concedere*, to grant.
Cuoco, *coſſi*, *cotto*, *cuocere*, to bake.
Dico, *diſſi*, *detto*, *dire* for *dicere*, to ſay.
Muovo, *moſſi*, *moſſo*, *muovere*, to move.
Scrivo, *ſcriſſi*, *ſcritto*, *ſcrivere*, to write.
Vivo, *viſſi*, *viſſuto* and *vivuto*, *vivere*, to live.

4. Thoſe in *ggo* and *tto*, double alſo the *ſ* in the Definite, and the *t* in the Participle, becauſe of the double Conſonant of the Indicative; as,

Leggo, *leſſi*, *letto*, *leggere*, to read.
Friggo, *friſſi*, *fritto*, *friggere*, to fry.
Traggo, *traſſi*, *tratto*, *trarre*, to draw.
Metto, *meſſi*, *meſſo*, *mettere*, to put.
Rifletto, *rifleſſi*, *rifleſſo*, *riflettere*, to reflect.
Commetto, *commeſſi*, *commeſſo*, *commettere*, to commit.

5. The *n* is often loſt in the Definite, and Participle, particularly in Verbs in *ndere*; as,

Fondo, *fuſi*, *fuſo*, *fondere*, to melt.
Prendo, *preſi*, *preſo*, *prendere*, to take.
Scendo, *ſceſi*, *ſceſo*, *ſcendere*, to come down.
Spendo, *ſpeſi*, *ſpeſo*, *ſpendere*, to ſpend.
Tendo, *teſi*, *teſo*, *tendere*, to ſtretch.
Naſcondo, *naſcoſi*, *naſcoſo*, and *naſcoſto*, *naſcondere*, to hide.

The

The Verbs of the third Conjugation in *Ire*, make their Participle in *Ito*; as, *ſentire*, *ſentito*; *finire*, *finito*: Except, *Apparire*, *apparſo*; *coprire*, *coperto*; *aprire*, *aperto*; *comparire*, *comparſo*; *dire*, *detto*; *morire*, *morto*; *offerire*, *offerto*, *venire*, *venuto*.

All the Participles of the firſt Conjugation are formed of the Infinitive, by ſtriking off *re*, and adding *to*; as, *amare*, *amato*; of the ſecond Conjugation, by ſtriking off *ere*, and adding *uto*; as, *credere*, *creduto*; and of the third Conjugation, by ſtriking off *re*, and adding *ito*; as, *ſentire*, *ſentito*; and as for the Uſe of them, we ſhall ſpeak of it in the Syntax.

CHAP. VII.

Of Adverbs.

AN Adverb is a Part of Speech, which is generally put before or after Verbs, and is ſometimes joined with Nouns, to expreſs their different Circumſtances, or fill up their Signification; ex. *Parlar bene*, to ſpeak well; *ſcriver male*, to write ill; *eſſer ſpeſſo ammalato*, to be often ſick; *cantare perfettamente*, to ſing to Perfection.

Some Adverbs are expreſſed in one word; as, *bene*, well; *male*, ill; *ſpeſſo*, often. Some conſiſt

ſiſt of a Prepoſition and a Noun; as, *all' improviſo*, unawares; in *diſparte*, apart; *alle volte*, ſometimes, *&c.*

There are ſeveral Sorts of Adverbs; as, of Time, of Place, of Quantity, or Quality, *&c.* One cannot give a general Rule about the forming of the Adverbs. Thoſe that mark Quality, are generally form'd of an Adjective Feminine, by adding *mente;* ſo of *dotta* is formed the Adverb *dottamente*, learnedly; from *ſana*, *ſanamente*, wholſomely, *&c.*

They are formed alſo of the Superlative Feminine; as, *dottiſſima*, *dottiſſimamente*, moſt learnedly.

However, I would not make it a general Rule, becauſe all Adverbs are not formed of the Adjectives; nor are all Adjectives proper to form Adverbs.

If Nouns Adjective end in *le* or *re*, you muſt take off the laſt *e*, and put *mente* inſtead of the *e;* as, *crudele*, cruel, *crudelmente*, cruelly; *mortale*, mortal, *mortalmente*, mortally; *particolare*, particular, *particolarmente*, particularly, *&c.*

We have in our Language ſeveral Adjectives, which, without changing them, ſerve as Adverbs; as, *forte*, for *fortemente*, ſtrongly; *dolce*, for *dolcemente*, ſweetly; *certo* for *certamente*, certainly; *ſoave* for *ſoavemente*, agreeably.

Adverbs

Adverbs of Time.

Hor, *hora*, *adeſſo*, now.
Prima, before.
Ultimamente, lately.
Nuovamente, *Di freſco*, } newly.
Poco fa, *Guari*, } not long ſince or ago.
Da indi innanzi, hereafter, henceforth.
All' avvenire, for the future.
Fra poco, shortly.
Da qui a due meſi, in two Months.
Sempre, always.
Mai, never.
Per ſempre, always, for ever.
Speſſo, often.
Di rado, ſeldom.
Subito, immediately, or forthwith.
Oggi, to Day.
Jeri, Yeſterday.
Avantieri, or *Jer l' altro*, } the Day before Yeſterday.
Jerſera, Yeſternight, or laſt Night.
Jermattina, Yeſterday Morning.
Domani, To Morrow.
Domattina, To Morrow Morning.
Poſdomani, after to Morrow.
Altre volte, *Già*, } formerly, of old.

Ad ogni momento, every Moment.
Ogni giorno, every Day.
Giornalmente, daily.
Frattanto, in the mean while.
Per tre giorni, during three Days.
Digià, already.
Non ancora, not yet.
Di notte, in the Night-time.
Di giorno, in the Day-time.
Tardi, late.
Di buon ora, betimes.
Di buon' mattino, early.
Toſto, ſoon.
Di nuovo, again.
Quando, when.
Teſtè, juſt now.
Preſto, quickly.
Ancora, yet.
Allora, then.
Poi, then.
Dipoi, ſince.
Di qua a poco, in a little time.

REMARKS.

Note, That the ſame Adverbs of Interrogation, may ſerve alſo to anſwer, ex.

Quando andrai? When ſhall you go?
Quando potrò, when I can.
Quanto ſtarai? how long will you ſtay?
Quanto vorrai, as long as you will.

Quan-

Quando is ſometimes a conditional Particle that ſignifies *if*; as, *quando tu voglia venire, averò cura, che niente ti manchi*, if you will come, I will take care, that you ſhall want nothing.

Adverbs of Place.

Adverbs of Place are of two Sorts, ſome ſerve to ask, and ſome ſerve to anſwer.

There are but two Adverbs of Place, that ſerve to ask; *dove*, where; and *donde*, from whence; however, the different Particles, or Verbs of Motion or Reſt, form ſix, which are:

Dove ſei? Where are you?
Dove vai? Whither are you going?
Donde vieni? From whence come you?
Verſo dove andrai? Towards what Place ſhall you go?
Donde paſſerai? By what Place ſhall you go?
Fin dove andrai? How far ſhall you go?

The ſame Adverbs *dove* and *donde*, which ſerve to ask, may ſerve alſo to anſwer, when they are Relatives to what preceeds.

Dove ſei? Where are you? *Dove mi vedi*, where you ſee me.
Donde paſſerai? By what Place ſhall you go?
Per donde paſſai hieri, by the Place I went Yeſterday.

Ove ſei? Where are you?

To the Queſtion *ove ſei?* We anſwer with the following Adverbs.

Quivi, there.
Qui, *Qua* } here.
Coſtì, *Coſtà* } there, or thither.
Là, *Lì* } there.
Per tutto, every where.
Su, up.
Giù, down.
Dietro, behind.
Entro, *Dentro* } within.
Fuori, without.
Sotto, under.
Sopra, upon.
Vicino, near.
Ovunque, every where.

Donde vieni? From whence come you.

To the ſecond Queſtion *donde vieni?* we anſwer with the following Adverbs, adding *di*, or *da*.

Di qui or *quinci*, from hence.
Di lì or *di là*, from thence.
Di coſtì, *di coſtinci*, from thence.
Quindi or *indi*, from thence.
D'altronde, from another Place.
Di lontano, from far.
D'appreſſo, from-hard by.
Quinci ſu, from above.
Quincentro, from here within.

Dove vai? Where are you going?

To the Queſtion *dove vai?* we anſwer with the following Adverbs.

Qua,

Qua, here.
Là or *colà*, there.
Coſtà, there.
Laſsù, above.
Laggiù, below.
Coſta-giù, there below.
Colaſsù, there above.
Dentro, within.
Fuori, without.
Verſo, towards.

Verſo dove andrai? Towards what Place shall you go?

To the Queſtion *verſo dove andrai*, we anſwer with the following Adverbs.

Verſo qua, towards this Place.
Verſo là, towards that Place.
Verſo la caſa, towards Home.

Donde paſſerai? by what Place shall you go?

To the Queſtion *donde paſſerai*, we anſwer with the following Adverbs.

Di qua, this way.
Di là, that way.

Note, That we uſe alſo the Prepoſition *per* or *da*, either for to anſwer, or to ask. *Per dove paſſerai?* by what Place shall you go? *Per Fiorenza*, by *Florence*; da *Roma*, by *Rome*.

Fin dove anderai? How far ſhall you go?

To the Queſtion *fin dove anderai?* we anſwer with theſe Adverbs.

Fin qua, to this Place.
Fin là, to that Place.
Fin coſtà, *Fin colà*, } as far as that, or thitherto.

And with ſeveral others, that are proper to be joined with *fino*, which often becomes a Prepoſition; *fino a caſa*, as far as home; *fino al mare*, as far as the Sea.

Adverbs of Quantity.

Quanto, how much.	*Tanto*, ſo much.
Quanti, how many.	*Altretanto*, as much.
Troppo, too much, too many.	*Al più*, at the moſt.
Molto, much, or a great deal.	*Almeno*, at leaſt.
Molti, many.	*Per meno*, for leſs.
Più, d'avantaggio, more.	*Quaſi*, almoſt.
Meno, leſs.	*Non molto* not much.
Un pochettino, but a little.	*Affatto*, quite.
Niente affatto, not all.	*Del tutto*, entirely.

Adverbs of Number.

Una volta, once.
Due volte, twice.
Tre volte, thrice, or three times.

Tan-

Tante volte, ſo many times.
Molte volte, ſeveral times.
Quante volte? how many times?

Adverbs of Order.

Primieramente, firſt, in the firſt Place.
Secondariamente, ſecondly, in the ſecond Place.
In terzo luogo, thirdly, in the third Place.
Sopra tutto, above all.
Al poſtutto, altogether.
In giro, by turns.
In ordine, in order, orderly.
In fine, *alla fine*, in fine, at laſt.
Alla fila, in a File, one after another.
Inſieme, together.

Adverbs of Affirmation.

Certo, *di certo*, } certainly.
Per certo, *certamente*, }
Veramente, *di vero*, } truly, in truth.
In vero, *nel vero*, *in verità*, }
A fè, in faith.
Al ſicuro, certainly.
Al fermo, } aſſuredly.
Per fermo, }
Bene, *ſi bene*, yes indeed.
Sì, } yes.
Mai sì, }
In verità, indeed, in truth.
A dire il vero, to ſpeak the Truth.
Perche no? why not?

Adverbs of Negation or Denial.

Non, no.
Nè, *no*, nor.
Non mai, *Non giamai*, } never.
Per nulla, *Per niente*, } by no means.
Miga, *ne miga*, *non miga*, not at all.
In conto alcuno, in no wiſe.

Adverbs of Doubt.

Forſe, *Forſe che*, } perhaps, may be.
Per aventura, by chance.
Puo eſſere, that may be.

Adverbs of Interrogation.

Che? *Perche?* } why? what?
Perche coſì? why ſo?
Perche no? why not?
Come? how?
In che modo? in what manner?

Adverbs of Reaſon.

Perche, *Perciocchè*, *A cauſa che*, *Imperocchè*, } becauſe.

Ad-

Adverbs of Choice.

Più toſto, } rather.
Più preſto, } ſooner.
Meglio, better, ſooner.
Sopra tutto, above all.
Anzi, } rather.
Prima, } ſooner.

Adverbs of Compariſon.

Come, as like.
Così, ſo, thus.
Più, more.
Meno, leſs.
Siccome, as.
A guiſa, like.
A modo, like.
Vieppiù, much more.
Viemeno, much leſs.
Tanto, } as much.
Quanto, }

Adverbs of Demonſtration.

Ecco, there is, here is, or behold.
Ecco qui, here is.
Ecco lì, there is.

Adverbs of Exceſs.

Aſſai, a great deal.
Pur aſſai, very much.
Eccesſivamente, exceſſively.

Un mondo, a World.
Oltre ogni credenza, beyond all Belief.
Smiſuratamente, beyond Meaſure.
Di gran lunga, by far.
Fuor di miſura, out of Meaſure.

Adverbs of Exception or Reſtriction.

Solamente, *Solo*, } only.
Purchè, provided.
Se non ſe, except.
Con patto che, upon Condition.
Fuori, *Eccetto*, *Salvo*, } except.

Adverbs of Confuſion.

Confuſamente, confuſedly.
Alla roveſcia, the wrong way.

Adverbs of Aggregation.

Inſieme, together.
Unitamente, jointly.

Adverbs of Separation.

Separatamente, ſeparately.
Da parte, apart.
Particolarmente, *In particolare*, } particularly, eſpecially.
Da ſe, by it's ſelf.

Ad-

Adverbs of Deſign.

Appoſta,
A bello ſtudio,
A bella poſta, } on purpoſe, purpoſely.
A diſegno, deſignedly.
Deliberatamente,
Eſpreſſamente, } conſiderately, adviſedly.
Da vero, in good earneſt.

Adverbs of Raſhneſs.

Alla ſtordita, raſhly, heedleſsly.
Temerariamente, raſhly.
In fretta, in haſte.
Inconſideratamente, at random, raſhly.
Precipitatamente, with Precipitation.

Adverbs of Difficulty.

Appena,
A mala pena, } hardly, ſcarce.
A contro voglia,
Mal volontieri, } againſt one's Will.

Adverbs of Haſte.

Preſto,
Subito,
Prontamente, } quickly.
In fretta,
Frettoloſamente, } in haſte.
In un ſubito, on a ſudden.

Adverbs

Adverbs of Moderation.

Poco a poco, by little and little, by degrees.
Paſſo a paſſo, Step by Step.
Bel bello, ſoftly, gently.
Adagio, ſoftly.

Adverbs to expreſs different Motions of the Body.

Inginocchione, upon one's Knees.
Tentone, *Brancolone*, } groping.
Carpone, upon all Fours.
A pie, on Foot.
A cavallo, on Horſeback.
A cavalcione, a ſtraddle.
Boccone, upon one's Belly.
A roveſcio, upon one's Back.
In ſulla vita, upright.

Adverbs of Quality.

Corteſemente, courteously.
Debitamente, deſervedly.
Giuſtamente, juſtly.
Infinitamente, infinitely.
Mediocremente, indifferently.
Bene, well.
Meglio, better.
Male, ill.
Peggio, worſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Prepoſitions.

A Prepoſition is a Part of Speech which is put before Nouns, and ſometimes before Verbs, *&c.* to explain ſome particular Circumſtance.

Prepoſitions may be divided into Separable and Inſeparable. An inſeparable Prepoſition is never found but in compound Words, and ſignifies nothing of it ſelf; ſuch as, *di*, *diſ*, *eſ*; ex. *dipendere*, to depend; *diſfare*, to undo; *eſporre*, to expoſe. A ſeparable Prepoſition is generally ſeparated from other Words, and ſignifies ſomething of it ſelf; as, *ſopra*, upon; *ſotto*, under.

The Inſeparable Prepoſitions are,

Arci; Arciduca, an Arch-Duke.
Di; dipendere, to depend.
Dis; diſfare, to undo.
Es; eſporre, to expoſe.
Fras; fraſtuono, a great Noiſe.
Inter; interporre, to interpoſe.
Intro; intromettere, to meddle.
Mis; *misfatto*, a Crime.
Pos; poſporre; to poſtpone.
Pre; prevenire, to prevent.
Pro; promettere, to promiſe.

Ra;

Ra; raccogliere, to gather.
Re; reſpirare, to breathe.
Ri; riprendere, to take again.
Ris; riſciacquare, to rinſe again.
Sor; ſorridere, to ſmile.
Sos; ſoſtenere, to ſupport.
Sot; ſottomettere, to ſubmit.

Theſe Prepoſitions have three Effects: Either to increaſe; as, *Veſcovo*, a Biſhop; *Arciveſcovo*, an Archbishop: Or to diminish; as, *rido*, I laugh; *ſorrido*, I ſmile: Or to change; as, *pongo*, I put; *poſpongo*, I poſtpone.

Dis, ſerves to expreſs the contrary of the Word it is joined to; as, *diſpiacere*, to diſpleaſe; *disfare*, to undo; are the contrary of *piacere* and *fare*.

Note, That almoſt all Words compoſed of this Prepoſition may quit the *di*, and leave only the *ſ*; as, *ſpiacere*, inſtead of *diſpiacere*.

On the other Side, almoſt all the Words that begin with an *ſ*, may receive the *di*, or at leaſt an *i*; as, *ſpoglio*, *diſpoglio*, I ſtrip; *ſgombro*, *diſgombro*, and *iſgombro*, I empty. *Ra*, *Ri*, mark a Reiteration of the Action; as, *raccogliere*, to gather again; *ripigliare*, to retake, *riſciacquare*, to rinſe again.

Sometimes the Particle *ra* makes no Difference in the Signification of the primitive Word; as, *rallentare*, *raſſicurare*, *racquiſtare*, have the ſame Signi-

Signification of *allentare*, to slacken; *aſſicurare*, to aſſure; *acquiſtare*, to acquire.

Of ſeparable Prepoſitions, ſome govern the Genitive, ſome the Dative, others the Accuſative.

Prepoſitions that govern the Genitive or Dative.

Accanto, *allato*, by, near.
Adoſſo or *Addoſſo*, upon.
A fronte or *affronte*, over-againſt.
All' incontro, before, oppoſite, over-againſt.
A piè or *appiè*, at bottom
A petto, in Compariſon, or over-againſt.
A rimpetto or *dirimpetto*, oppoſite, over-againſt.
Prima, before.
Appreſſo, by, or near.
Avanti or *avante*, before.
Circa, about.
Contra, againſt.
Dentro, within.
Dietro, behind.
Davanti, before.
Fino or *ſino*, till, or until.
Fuori, without.
Lungi or *lunge*, far.
Dinanzi, *Innanzi*, } before.
Oltre, beſides.
Sotto, under.

Pre-

Prepoſitions that govern the Accuſative or Genitive.

Dopo, after.
Avanti, before.
Con, with.
In mezzo, in the middle.
Da, at, or to.
Contra, againſt.
In, in.
Nell, *nella*, *nello*, in, or in the.
Dentro, within.
Fuori, without.
Dietro, behind.
Sotto, under.
Sopra, upon.
Fra, *tra*, between.
Verſo, towards.
Eccetto, except.
Fuori, without.
A lato, by.
Raſente, near.
Per, for.
Preſſo, *Vicino*, } by, or near.
Senza, without.
Secondo, according.
Circa, about.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of Conjunctions.

A Conjunction is a Part of Speech which ſerves to join, and connect the ſeveral Parts of a Diſcourſe.

Conjunctions are divided into ſeveral Orders, of which ſome are,

Conjunctions copulative, or to join.

E or *et*, *ed*, and.
Anche, *anco*
Ancora, *eziandio* } alſo, ſtill, yet.

REMARKS.

Et is the Conjunction all Languages moſt frequently uſe. We uſe indifferently the Conjunction *e* or *et*, before the Words that begin with a Conſonant, and *et* or *ed* before thoſe that begin with a Vowel; although *ed* is better ſaid than *et*.

In the Pronunciation, the *t* of the Word *et*, before a Word that begins with a Conſonant, is never pronounced.

E ſometimes is uſed inſtead of *nondimeno*, yet; as, *poco vedete, e parvi veder molto*, you ſee but little, and yet you think you ſee a great deal.

Et

Et or *ed* are placed at the Beginning of a Diſcourſe, and they are expreſſed in *English* by *Both;* ex.

Ed amici, e nemici, tutti mi ſono egualmente contrarii, both Friends and Foes are equally againſt me.

Disju..ctive, or to ſeparate.

O, ovvero, o pure, or.
Ancorchè, though.
Nè, neither, nor.
Tampoco, neither.
Benchè, *Sebbene*, } although, or though.

REMARKS.

When a Vowel follows, we write, *od;* however, one may write, *o*, or *od*.

Adverſative, i. e. *ſhewing ſome Contrariety.*

Ma, but.
Pure, yet, in the mean time.
Nondimeno, *Intanto*, *Pure, però*, } however, yet.
Tuttavia, *Tutta volta*, } yet, but ſtill.
Nulladimeno, nevertheleſs.

Con-

Conditional.

Se, if.
Se mai, if ever.
Con patto, che, upon Condition that.
Con queſto però, upon this Condition.
Quando, *Ogni volta, che* } if.
Purchè, *Tutte le volte che*, } provided.
A meno che, unleſs, except.

Cauſal, or giving Reaſon of what is ſaid.

Che, *perchè*, *Perocchè*, *perciocchè*, } becauſe.
Affinche, that, to the end that.

Illatives.

There is no other Diference between the Conjunctions cauſal and illative, but only that the firſt always preceeds the Reaſon of what is ſaid, and the others, on the contrary, are always preceeded by them.

Adunque, *dunque*, then.
Perciò, *Onde*, *Laonde*, } therefore.
Per la qual coſa, therefore.
Per conſeguenza, by Conſequence.
Dunque, is placed ſometimes at the Beginning

of a Diſcourſe, and implies a certain diſdainful Reproach; Ex.

Dunque ſarò io ſempre acciecato dal tuo amore! What, ſhall I be always blinded by your Love!

Final, or giving Reaſon why we do a Thing.

Acciocchè, } that, to the End that.
Affine }
Che, that.
Per, for, in order to.

Concluſive.

Dunque, therefore, then.
Di maniera che, ſo that.
Però, } therefore.
Laonde, }
Perciò, therefore.

Continuative.

Del reſto, as for the reſt.
Hora, now.
Poichè, } ſince.
Poſciachè, }
In guiſa che, } ſo as, in like wiſe.
In maniera che, }
Ma ſe, but if.
Se non, ſave, but, if not.

Note, by the way, that Conjunctive are oftentimes confounded with the Adverbs, and that they have ſeveral other Names, according to the ſeveral Senſes they are uſed in.

CHA-

CHAP. X.

Of Interjections.

THE Interjection is a Part of Speech that ſerves to expreſs the ſudden Motions and Tranſports of the Soul.

There are ſeveral Sorts of Interjections; ſuch as,

Of Joy.

Ha! ha! ha! ha! ha! ha!
Orsù, animo, come, come on.
O che allegrezza! oh Joy!
Su, allegramente. come be chearful.

Of Grief.

Ahi! ah! alas! ah!
Oime! alas!
Oime laſſo! / *Laſſo me!* } alas poor me!
Me miſero! poor Wretch that I am!
Oh Dio! oh, my God!

Of Pain.

Ai! oh! oh! oh oh!

To encourage.

Animo, ſu, / *Orſu, via,* come, come.
Su via, come on.

To warn.

Badate a voi,
State in cervello, } have a care.

Pian piano, ſoftly.
Fermati, *olà*, hold, hold.

To call.

Olà, ho there, ho hey.
Chi è lì? who is there?

Of Admiration.

O! vedi! lack-a-day! ſee!
Cappita! ay, marry.

Of Averſion.

Oibò, fie, fough,
Eh va via, fie upon you.

Of Silence.

St, *zitto*, hush, st.
Silenzio, Silence.
Tacete, Peace there.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Syntax.

THE Syntax or Conſtruction is the laſt Part of Grammar, which treats of the due ordering of the ſeveral Parts of Speech, towards the regular Compoſition of Sentences or Phraſes.

ARTICLE I.

Of the Conſtruction of Articles.

Although what I have ſaid already in the foregoing Chapter about Articles, and the Declenſion of Nouns, may be ſufficient; yet the right uſing thoſe Particles being one of the greateſt Niceties of the *Italian* Tongue, I ſhall endeavour to make the whole Matter as plain as poſſible, by the following Obſervations.

Firſt OBSERVATION.

We uſe the Articles, *il*, *la*, *i*, *le*, with their oblique Caſes, *del*, *della*, *al*, *alla*, *dal*, *dalla*, before Nouns, which are taken ſometimes in a *Definite*, and ſometimes in an *Indefinite* Senſe.

EXAMPLES.

Of a Definite Senſe.	*Of an Indefinite Senſe.*
L'uomo, che vedete the Man you ſee.	*L'uomo è un animale ragionevole*, Man is a rational Animal.
La donna che voi amate, the Woman you love.	*La donna è ſtata creata*

I figlivoli di mio padre, my Father's Children.

Parlo del libro, che m' avete mandato, I ſpeak of the Book you have ſent me.

Ricordatevi della promeſſa, che m' avete fatta, remember the Promiſe you made me.

Ho parlato di voi al Principe, ed alla Principeſſa, I ſpoke of you to the Prince and Princeſs.

Ci ha fatto la deſcrizione delle città d' Italia, he gave us the Deſcription of the Cities of *Italy*.

Ne parlerò agli miei amici, I will ſpeak of it to my Friends.

Un buon capitano, è amato da' ſuoi ſoldati, a good Captain is beloved by his Soldiers.

per ajuto dell' uomo, the Woman was created for a Help to Man.

I figlivoli devono ubbidire a' loro Parenti, Children ought to obey their Parents.

Ho bevuto del vino a pranzo, I drank ſome Wine at Dinner.

Gli uni ſono dediti al vizio, gli altri alla virtù, ſome are given to Vice, ſome to Virtue.

Il favore de' Principi è incerto, the Favour of Princes is uncertain.

Biſogna parlar con riſpetto alle dame, one muſt ſpeak reſpectfully to the Ladies.

Dalle diſgrazie altrui, dobbiamo imparare ad evitarle, from other Men's Misfortunes, we ought to learn how to ſhun them.

Second

Second OBSERVATION.

The Articles, *di*, *a*, *da*, are either Definite, or Indefinite, according to the Signification of the Nouns they are joined to.

EXAMPLES.

Of a Definite Senſe.	*Of an Infinitive Senſe*
La potenza di Dio è grande, God's Power is great.	*E' un comando di Re*, it is a King's Command.
Ho detto a Pietro, che, I told *Peter*, that.	*Non ne parlerò a neſſuno*, I ſhall ſpeak of it to no Body.
Abbiamo parlato di voi ſtamattina, we ſpoke of you this Morning.	*Iddio ci liberi da male*, God deliver us from Evil.
Ho inteſo da mia ſorella, che, I have heard from my Siſter, that.	*Da chi l'avete inteſo?* of whom have you heard it?

Third OBSERVATION.

Nouns expreſſing an ordinal Number, have the Articles, *il*, *la*, *i*, *le*; as,

Io ſono il primo, I am the firſt; *tu ſei il ſecondo*, thou art the ſecond; *ella è la terza*, she is the third.

But when a proper Name goes before the *ordinal Number*, then the Article is ſuppreſſed in *Italian*; as.

Giorgio ſecondo, George the Second; *Carlo Primo*, Charles the Firſt; *Luigi decimo quarto*, Lewis the Fourteenth.

Fourth OBSERVATION.

Pronouns Poſſeſſive Conjunctive have the Articles, *il*, *la*, *i*, *le*; as, *il mio libro*, my Book; *la mia caſa*, my Houſe; *i miei libri*, my Books; *le mie biancherie*, my Linnen. But if the Poſſeſſive follow the Subſtantive, the Article is ſuppreſſed; as, *queſta caſa è mia*, this houſe is mine.

Note, That theſe Pronouns, followed by Nouns of Quality or Kindred, have the Articles *di*, *a*, *da*, in the Singular; but in the Plural they have *i*, *le*, *de*, *delle*, *a*, *alle*, *da*, *dalle*; ex. *mio fratello*, my Brother; *di mio fratello*, of my Brother; *da mio fratello*, from my Brother; *i miei fratelli*, my Brothers; *a' miei fratelli*, to my Brothers, *&c. mia ſorella*, *di mia ſorella*, *&c. le mie ſorelle*, *delle mie ſorelle*, *&c. voſtra Maeſtà*, your Majeſty; *di voſtra Maeſtà*, of your Majeſty; *a voſtra Maeſtà*, to your Majeſty; *da voſtra Maeſta*, from your Majeſty; *le Maeſtà voſtre*, your Majeſties; *delle Maeſtà voſtre*, *alle Maeſtà voſtre*, &c.

Pronouns poſſeſſive abſolute, require no Article before them; as, whoſe Houſe is this? it is mine, it is thine, it is ours; *di chi è queſta caſa? è mia*, *è tua*, *è noſtra*.

Fifth

Fifth OBSERVATION.

The Articles *il*, *la*, *i*, *le*, are rendered in *English* by the Article *a* or *an* in the following and like Expreſſions; *egli fa il filoſofo*, he ſets up for a Philoſopher; *egli fa il grande*, he ſets up for a Lord; *ella fa la dama*, she ſets up for a Lady; *ella fa la modeſta*, the affects the modeſt Woman.

Sixth OBSERVATION.

Names of Kingdoms, Provinces, Rivers, and Mountains, have generally the Articles *il*, *la*, *i*, *le*; as,

La Francia è un potente regno, France is a powerful Kingdom; *l'Italia è un paeſe molto ameno*, Italy is a very pleaſant Country; *la Toſcana è la ſola Provincia d'Italia, dove ſi parla bene Italiano*, Tuſcany is the only Province of *Italy*, where they ſpeak good *Italian*; *il Tevere*, the *Tiber*; *il Tamigi*, the *Thames*; *le Alpi*, the *Alps*; *I Pirenei*, the *Pyrenees*.

But Names of Kingdoms and Provinces loſe the Article after the Prepoſition *in*; ex. *Io vo in Francia*, I go into *France*; *egli dimora in Inghilterra*, he lives in *England*.

They are alſo declined with the Article *di* only; ex. *Io ritorno di Francia*, I return from *France*; *il regno di Portogallo*, the Kingdom of *Portugal*; *vino di Fiorenza*, Florence *Wine*:

Ho-

However, we ſay alſo, *Io parlo della Francia, dell' Italia*, I ſpeak of *France*, of *Italy*.

Names of Mountains loſe their Article after the Word *monte*; ex. *il monte Parnaſo*, Mount Parnaſſus; *il monte Sinai*, Mount Sinai.

Seventh OBSERVATION.

Nouns of Quantity govern a Genitive Caſe with the Article *di*; ex. *una foglietta di vino*, a Pint of Wine; *un braccio di panno*, a Yard of Cloth; *un' ala di tela*, an Ell of Linnen; *uno ſtajo di grano*, a Bushel of Corn.

The Adverbs of Quantity, *a great deal*, *much* or *many*, take no Article, but become Adjectives in *Italian*, and agree with the Subſtantive in Gender, Number, and Caſe; ex. *ho bevuto molto vino*, I have drunk a great deal of Wine; *ha mangiato molta carne*, he has eat a great deal of Meat; *voi avete molti libri*, you have a great many Books.

Eighth OBSERVATION.

Before proper Names of Men or Women, and of Months, *&c.* we put the Articles *di*, *a*, *da*; as, *ho detto a Paolo*, I ſaid to *Paul*.

An Adjective added for an Epithet or Nickname to a proper Name, is always put in the Nominative Caſe with the Article *il* or *la*, let the

the Caſe of the proper Name be what it will; *io ſcrivo di Luigi il Grande*, I write of *Lewis* the Great; *Carlo il calvo*, Charles the bald.

The Article *il* or *la* is uſed ſometimes before a Word that denotes a Quality added to proper Names, to diſtinguish a Perſon by one of his Qualities; as, *Lucrezia la caſta*, Lucrece the chaſte; *Elena la bella*, Helen the handſome.

We put alſo the Article before proper Names of Women; as, *la Fauſtina*, *la Cuzzoni*, *la Lauretta*, *la Fiammetta*.

It is uſed alſo before a proper Name, to expreſs the Works of that Perſon; ex. *ho letto il Taſſo con gran piacere*, I have read *Taſſo* with a great deal of Pleaſure; *il Petrarca mi piace molto*, I like *Petrarch* very much.

We ſay alſo, *il Ceſare*, *l' Aleſſandro*, when we mean a Statue or a Picture of *Cæſar* or *Alexander*.

Before Nouns appellative, we alſo put the Articles, *il*, *la*, *i*, *le*; as, *il duca*, the Duke; *il Principe*, the Prince; *la ducheſſa*, the Dutcheſs; *la Principeſſa*, the Princeſs; *il maeſtro*, the Maſter; *lo ſcolajo*, the Scholar.

Nouns of Degree or Honour before proper Names loſe the Article; ex. *Papa Innocenzio decimo*, Pope *Innocent* the Tenth; *Monſignor Carlo*, my Lord *Charles*; *Madama Catterina*, my Lady *Catherine*; *Maeſtro Alberto*, Maſter Albert. But if thoſe Nouns be put alone, without the

the Names of the Perſons, then we muſt ſay, *il Papa*, *il Maeſtro*.

Note, That *Monſignore*, and *Madama*, are always followed by the Articles, when they are put before another Name of Quality; as, *Monſignore il Duca*, my Lord Duke; *Madama la Ducheſſa*, my Lady Dutcheſs; *di Monſignor il Duca*, of my Lord Duke; *di Madama la Ducheſſa*, of my Lady Dutcheſs.

Sometimes the Article *il* goes before a Verb of the Infinitive Mood; as, *il pentirſi da ſezzo nulla giova*, it avails nothing to repent too late.

Ninth OBSERVATION.

To expreſs an uncertain Quantity, or Part of a thing, we uſe the Articles *del*, *della*; as, *datemi del pane*, give me ſome Bread; *dateci del vino*, *della carne*, give us ſome Wine, ſome Meat; *m' ha dato de' libri*, he has given me ſome Books. But if *poco*, little, be uſed, the Article *di* muſt follow; *datemi un poco di vino*, give me a little Wine: Except if after *poco* ſome Wine be ſpecified; as, *un poco del bianco*, *un poco del roſſo*, a little of white, a little of the red. We ſay *un fiaſco di vino*, a Flask of Wine; *una ſcatola di tabacco*, a Box of Snuff; that is to ſay, full of Wine, full of Snuff; but if we will expreſs for what Uſe the Thing is, we ſay *da*; as, *un fiaſco da vino*, a Wine Flask; *una ſcatola da tabacco*, a Snuff-Box.

Note,

Note, That we never expreſs the Articles *del*, *della*, before an Infinitive coming after another Verb; as, *ho pane per vivere*, I have Bread to live; *egli ha talento a baſtanza da condurſi*, he has Wit enough to govern himſelf.

Tenth OBSERVATION.

The Articles *il*, *la*, *lo*, *i*, *le*, *gli*, and their oblique Caſes, *del*, *della*, *dello*, *al*, *alla*, *allo*, *dal*, *dalla*, *dallo*, *di*, *a*, *da*, &c. are always put before the Subſtanſtives to which they belong; as, *il Rè*, the King; *la Regina*, the Queen; *lo Scolare*, the Scholar; *la volontà di Dio*, the Will of God; *l'eſercito del Re*, the King's Army; *le miſerie della vita umana*, the Miſeries of human Life; *la vanità degli uomini*, the Vanity of Men.

When an Adjective goes before a Subſtantive, we place before it the Articles belonging to the Subſtantive; as, *il Gran Signore*, the Grand Seignior; *la Gran Brettagna*, Great Britain.

Eleventh OBSERVATION.

We repeat the Article in *Italian* before Subſtantives, when ſeveral of them come together before or after a Verb; whereas it is generally left out in *English*; as, *la clemenza*, *la liberalità*, *la generoſità*, *il valore*, *il coraggio*, Clemency, Liberality, Generoſity, Valour, Courage;

i fa-

i favori, e le grazie che ho ricevuto da voi, the Favours and Kindneſſes I have received from you; *ho comprato del pane, del vino, e della carne*, I have bought Bread, Wine, and Meat.

However, when we ſpeak indefinitely of a Thing, without ſpecifying the Quality or the Quantity of it, we uſe no Article; as, *io non ho conoſciuto mai uomo più generoſo*, I never knew a Man more generous than you; *egli ha prudenza a baſtanza da condurſi*, he has Prudence enough to behave himſelf; *voi mi dovete cento ſcudi, datemi vino in pagamento*, you owe me a hundred Crowns, give me Wine for it.

Twelfth OBSERVATION.

We put in *Italian* the Article before ſeveral Nouns that have none in *English*; as, *la virtù*, Virtue; *il Vizio*, Vice; *la clemenza*, Clemency; *la Temperanza*, Temperance; *l'orgoglio*, Pride; *la Francia*, France; *l'Inghilterra*, England.

Thirteenth OBSERVATION.

There are ſeveral Expreſſions in *Italian*, wherein the Article is ſuppreſſed; as, *aver fame*, to be hungry; *aver caldo*, to be hot; *parlare Italiano, Franceſe, Latino*, to ſpeak *Italian*, *French*, *Latin*; *dar malleveria*, to give Security, or to put in Bail; *far Teſtimonianza*, to bear witneſs.

Four-

Fourteenth OBSERVATION.

Names of Towns have no Article in the Nominative nor Accuſative, in the other Caſes we uſe *di*, *a*, *da*; as, *Roma*, *di Roma*, *a Roma*, *da Roma*, Rome, of, to, from *Rome*, *&c.* Pronouns Perſonal, *io*, *tu*, *&c.* have the ſame Article; as, *io*, *I*; *di me*, *a me*, *da me*, of me, to me, from me.

ARTICLE II.

Of the Conſtruction of Nouns Subſtantive.

When two Subſtantives come together, and one of them depends on the other, the ſecond muſt be in the Genitive Caſe; *la gloria di Dio*, the Glory of God; *il Palazzo del Re*, the King's Palace; *i capelli del capo*, the Hair of the Head; *la palma della mano*, the Palm of the Hand.

Two or more Subſtantives of the ſingular Number, ſignifying different Things, being joined by a Conjunction, are equivalent to a Noun of the plural Number; as, *la fede*, *la ſperanza*, *e la carità ſono le virtù Teologali*, Faith, Hope and Charity, are the Theological Virtues; *il Re*, *la Regina*, *e'l Principe ſono le prime Perſone del Regno*, the King, the Queen, and the Prince, are the firſt Perſons of the Kingdom.

When

When two or more Subſtantives ſingular are joined together, and ſignify but one ſingle Thing or Perſon, they require no more than a Verb or Noun ſingular; *Giorgio Secondo, Re della Gran Brettagna, ed Elettore di Brunſwick, è un Principe valoroſo, e magnanimo*, George the Second, King of *Great Britain*, and Elector of *Brunſwick*, is a valiant and generous Prince.

Of Adjectives.

There are four Things to be conſider'd in Adjectives, whether Nouns, Pronouns, or Participles, with Relation to Subſtantives, *viz.* their Poſition, Gender, Number, and Caſe.

The Poſition of Adjectives.

Of Adjectives, ſome go before the Subſtantive, others after it; and others again, either before or after, indifferently.

The Adjectives that go before the Subſtantive, are,

Firſt, The Adjectives of ordinal Numbers; ex. *Egli è il primo monarca del mondo*, he is the firſt Monarch of the World; *voi ſete la ſeconda perſona che ho veduto oggi*, you are the ſecond Perſon I have ſeen to Day.

Exceptions.

The adjective Ordinal is put after the Subſtantive; *firſt*, when joined to a proper Name; as,

as, *Carlo Primo*, Charles the Firſt; *Giorgio Secondo*, *George* the Second: And, *ſecondly*, when we quote a Book, a Chapter, *&c.* as, *libro primo*, the firſt Book; *capitolo ſecondo*, the ſecond Chapter.

Note, That when we uſe the Article, we may indifferently ſay *al libro primo*, or *primo libro*, in the firſt Book; and that ſpeaking of Books; Chapters, *&c.* without quoting them, the Adjective goes before the Subſtantive, according to the Rule; as, *ho letto il primo libro della voſtra Iſtoria*, I have read the firſt Book of your Hiſtory.

Secondly, All conjunctive poſſeſſive Pronouns are put before the Subſtantive; ex. *il mio cappello*, my Hat; *il tuo mantello*, thy Cloak; *il ſuo libro*, his Book.

Thirdly, The following Adjectives do generally go before the Subſtantives, *viz.*

Buono, good.
Cattivo, bad.
Grande, great.
Picciolo, little.
Bello, handſome, fine.
Brutto, ugly.
Grande, genteel.
Povero, poor.
Migliore, better.
Ricco, rich.

EXAMPLES.

Un buon uomo, a good Man; *una buona donna*, a good Woman; *cattivo tempo*, bad Weather; *un gran Perſonaggio*, a great Perſon; *un piccolo ragazzo*, a little Child; *un bel viſo*, a handſome Face; *un brutto colore*, an ugly Colour; *un galant' uomo*, a genteel Man; *un povero meſtiere*, a poor Trade; *il migliore amico del mondo*, the beſt Friend in the World; *il più ricco mercante di Londra*, the richeſt Merchant in *London*. However, this Rule is ſubject to many Exceptions.

Firſt, The forementioned Adjectives may be put after the Subſtantives, when one, two, or more Epithets are joined with them; as, *un uomo buono, e generoſo*, a good and generous Man; *un Principe grande, e magnifico*, a great and magnificent Prince; *una donna bella, e ricca*, a handſome and rich Woman.

Secondly, When the ſame Adjectives relate alſo to a following Subſtantive, they are put after the firſt Subſtantive; as, *un giovane bello come un Angelo*, a Boy as handſome as an Angel.

The Adjectives that come after the Subſtantives, are,

Thoſe that expreſs a Colour; ex.

Un fazzoletto bianco, a white Handkerchief; *un cappello nero*, a black Hat; *vin roſſo*, red Wine.

Se-

Secondly, All Participles of the Preterite, or paſt Tenſe; as, *un uomo conoſciuto*, a known Man; *parole finte*, feigned Words; *una ſtrada battuta*, a beaten Road.

Thirdly, Adjectives formed from Names of Nations; ex. *gentiluomo Italiano*, an *Italian* Gentleman, *una dama Ingleſe*, an *Engliſh* Lady; *un reggimento Italiano*, an *Italian* Regiment; *l' armata Ingleſe*, the *Engliſh* Fleet; *la gravità ſpagnuola*, Spaniſh Gravity.

Fourthly, Adjectives expreſſing a Quality of the Air, Weather and Elements, *ex.*

Vn tempo freddo, a cold Seaſon; *un luogo umido*, a damp Place; *un' aria pura*, a pure Air; *dell' acqua tiepida*, lukewarm Water.

Fifthly, Moſt Adjectives that may be uſed as Subſtantives; ſuch as, *gobbo* hunch-backed; *zoppo*, lame; *cieco*, blind; *guercio*, ſquinting, *&c.* ex. *un gobbo*, or *un uomo gobbo*, a crooked Man; *una gobba*, or *una donna gobba*, a crooked Woman.

Sixthly, Adjectives ending in *ele*, or *ile*; ex.

Un uomo crudele, a cruel Man; *una donna fedele*, a faithful Woman; *atti puerili*, childiſh Actions.

Seventhly, The following Adjectives, and ſome others, are alſo generally put after the Subſtantive.

Lungo, long.
Corto, short.
Neutro, neuter.
Generale, general.
Particolare, particular.
Singolare, ſingular.
Intiero, entire.
Languido, languid.
Virtuoſo, virtuous.
Vizioſo, vicious.
Pigro, lazy.
Pauroſo, fearful.
Conſiderabile, conſiderable.
Importuno, troubleſome.

But this Rule is liable to Exceptions.

Firſt RULE *of Adjectives.*

The Adjective ought to agree with the Subſtantive in Gender, Number, and Caſe; as, *un gran giardino*, a great Garden; *una bella caſa*, a fine Houſe; *uomini valoroſi*, valiant Men; *coſe umane*, human Things.

Second RULE.

The Maſculine Gender is accounted more noble than the Feminine; and therefore when two Subſtantives of different Genders, are the Nominative of the Verb *Eſſere*, or a paſſive Verb, the Adjective that follows ought to be of the Maſculine Gender, and of the Plural Number; ex.

Gli onori, e ricchezze ſono ambiti da tutti, Honours and Riches are ſought by every Body; *il marito e la moglie ſono tenuti d' amarſi ſcambievolmente*, Husband and Wife are obliged to love

love one another mutually; *il merito e la fortuna vanno raramente uniti*, Merit and Fortune ſeldom meet.

Of the Compariſon.

Although I have ſpoken at large of the Compariſon in the Analogy, yet it will not be amiſs to make the following Obſervations.

Firſt, Adverbs of Quantity; *più*, more; *meno*, leſs, which ſerve to compare Subſtantives, are to be followed by a Genitive Caſe; but the Article varies, according to the Subſtantives that are compared.

We uſe the Article *del*, *della*, *de'*, *delle*, if the Word *than* is followed by the Article *the*, or a Pronoun poſſeſſive, either abſolute or conjunctive; ex. nothing is brighter than the Sun, *niente è più chiaro del ſole;* the Sun is brighter than the Moon, *il ſole è più luminoſo della luna;* your Book is handſomer than mine, *il voſtro libro è più bello del mio*. Sometimes *the* is not expreſſed in *English;* as, nothing is more amiable than Virtue; *non v'è coſa più amabile della virtù*. In this Caſe you muſt obſerve what I have ſaid in the eleventh Obſervation, under the Title of the Conſtruction of Articles.

If after *than*, there is not the Article *the*, nor a Pronoun poſſeſſive, then we uſe the Article *di*;

as, *Peter* is richer than *Paul*, *Pietro è più ricco di Paolo*.

If the Word *than* has after it a Pronoun poſſeſſive, joined with a Noun that ſignifies Quality or Kindred, in the ſingular Number, we uſe the Article *di*; as, happier than your Highneſs, *più fortunato di voſtra Altezza*; handſomer than your Brother, *più bello di voſtro fratello*. But in the Plural we uſe *de'* or *delle*; as, happier than your Highneſs, *più felice delle Altezze voſtre*; handſomer than your Brothers, *più bello de' voſtri fratelli*.

If the Particle *than* is followed by an Adjective, a Verb, or an Adverb, it is expreſſed by *che*; as, *più lungo, che alto*, longer than high; *promette più che non attiene*, he promiſes more than he performs; *è meglio tardi che mai*, it is better later than never.

Adverbs of Quantity require the Article *di*; as, *ella ha più di venti anni*, she is more than twenty Years old; *ho ſpeſo poco meno di cento ſcudi*, I have ſpent little leſs than a hundred Crowns.

It is true, that ſometimes *che* comes immediately after *più*, but then it ſignifies *but*, and not *than*; ex. *non ho più che cento ſcudi*, I have but an hundred Crowns; *non ha più che venti anni*, he is but twenty Years old.

The Adverbs *ſo, as much, ſo much, as*, are expreſſed in *Italian* by *che, quanto*, or *sì*; as,

voi

voi ſete bello quanto lui, you are as handſome as he; *voi non ſete sì dotto, che lui*, you are not ſo learned as he; *ho tanti cavalli, che voi*, I have as many Horſes as you.

ARTICLE III.

Of the Uſe of Pronouns.

There are, as we ſaid before, ſeven Sorts of Pronouns, *viz.* the Perſonal, Poſſeſſive, Demonſtrative, Relative, Interrogative, Numeral, and Indefinite; upon which we ſhall make ſome uſeful Obſervations.

Of Perſonal Pronouns.

Firſt OBSERVATION.

Perſonal Pronouns may be divided into conjunctive and indifferent. Conjunctive Perſonal Pronouns are the Nominatives of Verbs; ſuch as, *io*, *tu*, *egli*, *ella*, *noi*, *voi*, &c. and the oblique Datives and Accuſatives; ſuch as, *mi*, *me*, *ci*, *ce*, *ti*, *te*, *vi*, *ve*, *lo*, *la*, &c.

All the reſt of Perſonal Pronouns are indifferent; ſuch as, *di me*, *a me*, *da me*; *di noi*, *a noi*, *da noi*.

Second OBSERVATION.

The Perſonal Pronouns that ſerve for the Nominative of a Verb, inſtead of a Subſtantive,

are theſe; *io*, *tu*, *egli*, *ella*, *noi*, *voi*, *eglino*, *elleno*; ex. *io amo*, *tu ami*, *egli*, or *ella ama*, I love, thou loveſt, he or she loveth; *noi amiamo*, *voi amate*, *eglino* or *elleno amano*, we love, ye love, they love.

Note, That in uſing of Verbs, it is indifferent whether you add theſe Pronouns or not, ſince the Termination of Tenſes shews the Perſon and the Number: However, if they are expreſſed, it is not a Fault. Moreover, we muſt conſult the Ear, ſince by expreſſing the Pronouns, we give a greater Emphaſis to the Diſcourſe.

Third OBSERVATION.

The Pronoun of the Nominative Caſe, is put after the Verb, in an Interrogation; as, *conoſci tu*? do you know? and in this ſhort Phraſe, *sì ti dich' io*, yes I tell you.

Fourth OBSERVATION.

Through a Corruption of moſt Languages of *Europe*, we uſe the ſecond Perſon plural inſtead of the ſingular, and we ſay *voi*, when we ſpeak to a ſingle Perſon; as, *voi ſete prudente*, *e ſavio*, you are prudent and wiſe. The ſame is done with Pronouns poſſeſſive; *il voſtro*, *i voſtri*, yours, which are uſed inſtead of *il tuo*, *i tuoi*, they, or thine.

Note,

Note, That though we uſe the plural *voi*, when we ſpeak to a ſingular Perſon, nevertheleſs the Adjective that relates to it, ought to be in the ſingular Number; ex. *voi ſete ben venuto*, you are welcome.

Note alſo, That the Pronouns *voi* and *voſtro*, are uſed when we ſpeak either to a familiar Friend, or to a Perſon very much below us: But when we ſpeak in a ceremonial Way, or to a Perſon above us, we uſe the third Perſon ſingular, *lei*, *Voſſignoria*, or *ella*, for both Genders; and the Pronoun poſſeſſive, *ſuo*, *ſuoi*, *ſua*, *ſue*; ex. *vuol ella*, or *lei*, or *Voſſignoria favorirmi*? will you favour me? *ecco i ſuoi libri*, *il ſuo cappello*, there are your Books, your Hat.

Fifth OBSERVATION.

Conjunctive Perſonal Pronouns, that ſerve for the Dative or Accuſative, are, *mi*, *me*, *ti*, *te*, *gli*, *ſi*, *ci*, *ce*, *vi*, *ve*, *lo*, *la*, &c. which are placed either before or after the Verb; ex. *vi dico*, or *dicovi*, I tell you; *mi ſcriſſe*, or *ſcriſſemi*, he wrote to me, *&c.*

Note, That when theſe Pronouns are put after any Tenſe of a Verb, that has an Accent over the laſt Letter, the Conſonant of the Pronoun is doubled; ex. *mi mandò*, or *mandommi*, he ſent me; *dirò*, or *dirovvi*, I ſhall tell you, *&c.*

All

All Verbs of one Syllable have naturally the Accent over the laſt Letter, and by Conſequence, the Conſonant of the Pronoun that is joined to them is doubled; ex. *egli fà*, he does, *fallo*, do it; *dà*, he gives; *dammi*, give me.

Note alſo, That though it is arbitrary to join theſe Pronouns to the Verbs, or to put them before; as, *amaſi*, or *ſi ama*, *diceſi*, or *ſi dice*; *darotti*, or *ti darò*; yet in the Imperative, Infinitive and Gerund, they muſt be put after; for we cannot ſay *mi ama*, but *amami*, love me; *non poſſo vi amare*, but *non poſſo amarvi*, I cannot love you: Or elſe you muſt put the Pronoun before the Verb that governs the Infinitive; ex. *non vi poſſo amare*, and not before the Infinitive; *non poſſo vi amare*: And we cannot ſay *mi dando*, *vi dando*, but *dandomi*, *dandovi*, in giving me, in giving you.

As for the Infinitive, you muſt obſerve, that the laſt Vowel is always taken away when we join the Pronoun to it; ex. we ſay *amarmi*, *temervi*, *ſentirci*, and not *amaremi*, *temerevi*, *ſentireci*.

We ſay moſt commonly *ſe* one's ſelf, for the Singular, and *ſi* themſelves, for the Plural; *per celarſe*, to hide himſelf; *per farſi amare*, to make themſelves be loved.

Sixth

Sixth OBSERVATION.

The conjunctive Pronouns, *me*, *mi*, *te*, *ti*, *ſe*, *ſi*, *gli*, *le*, *ce*, *ci*, *ve*, *vi*, though they have the ſame Signification, yet they are uſed indifferently.

1. *Me*, *te*, *ſe*, ſerve for all the Caſes; as, *di me*, *di te*, *di ſe*, *a me*, *a te*, *a ſe*, *&c. mi*, *ti*, *ci*, *vi*, ſerve only for the Dative and Accuſative; by *ſi* only for the Accuſative; *mi diſſe*, he told me; *ci vede*, he ſees us; *ti diedi*, he gave thee, *&c. ſi crede*, he thinks himſelf. *Me*, *te*, *ſe*, are governed by the Article *di*, *a*, *da*; and by all Prepoſitions; as, *di me*, *di te*, *di ſe*, *a me*, *a te*, *a ſe*, &c. *contro me*, againſt me; *verſo te*, towards thee; *per ſe*, for one's ſelf; *mi*, *ci*, *ti*, *vi*, *ſi*, are governed by a Verb; as, *mi crede*, he believes me; *ci vede*, he ſees us, *&c.*

Me, *te*, *ſe*, *ce*, *ve*, are joined to the Particles *lo*, *la*, *le*, *gli*, and the Particle relative *ne*; as, *me lo*, *me la*, *me le*, *me gli*, *me ne*; *te lo*, *te la*, *te le*, *te gli*, *te ne*; but generally we join them together; as, *ditemelo*, tell it me; *datemela*, give it me; *ditecelo*, tell it us; *vela manderò*, I will ſend it you; *mene ricordo*, I remember it; *ſela miſe in teſta*, he put it upon his Head.

When we make an Oppoſition between two Perſons, we ſay, *me*, *te*, without joining them to

to the Verb; as, *Ferir me in quello ſtato, e a voĭ armata non moſtrar pur l'arco*, to wound me in that Condition, and, to you that was armed, not to shew even the Bow.

Gli before *lo*, *la*, *le*, *li*, *ne*, takes an *e*; as, *glielo*, *gliela*, &c. *glielo dirò*, I will tell it him; *gliela manderò*, I will ſend it her, *&c.*

The Pronoun Conjunctive *loro* goes always after the Verb; as, *io diſſi loro*, I told them.

When *loro* is a Pronoun poſſeſſive, it requires the Article, *il*, *la*, *i*, *le*, before it; as, *il loro libro*, their Book; *i loro libri*, their Books; *la loro caſa*, their Houſe, *le loro caſe*, their Houſes.

Seventh OBSERVATION.

The Pronouns, *egli* and *ella*, accompany the Gerund, when the Verb following depends on them; as, *ſcrivendo egli s'ingegnò di guadagnare*, &c. by writing he ſtrove to gain, *&c. filando ella a poco a poco s' addormentò*, as she was ſpinning, she fell asleep: The ſame is underſtood of, *eglino*, and *elleno*: But if the Verb following is not governed by them, *lui*, *lei*, *loro*, are to be uſed: as, *cantando lui*, *io ſcrivevo*, as he was ſinging, I wrote; *venendo lei*, *tutti ſi fermarono*, as ſoon as she came, every Body ſtopt. The ſame Pronouns are alſo uſed with the Participle *come*, when *Equality* is ſignified; as, *coſtoro erano malizioſi come lui*,

lui, or *come lei*, or *come loro*; not *egli*, *ella*, *eglino*, or *elleno*, they were as malicious as he, she, they: But if *come* ſignifies *Similitude*, and not *Equality*, *egli*, *ella*, *eglino*, *elleno*, are uſed; as, *che direſte voi*, *ſe io foſſi nella via come egli* or *ella?* What would you ſay, if I was in the way as well as he or she?

Eighth OBSERVATION.

Some Perſonal Pronouns are called *Indifferent*, becauſe they may either be joined to the Verbs, or be ſeparate from them; as, *egli parla di me*, *di te*, he ſpeaks of me, of thee, *&c. di chi parla? di me*, who does he ſpeak of? of me.

Of Pronouns Poſſeſſive.

Firſt OBSERVATION.

The Gender of Pronouns poſſeſſive in *Italian*, does not follow that of the Perſon that ſpeaks, or is ſpoken of, but agrees with the particular Gender of every Noun they are joined to; ex. *mio padre*, my Father; *mia madre*, my mother; *ſuo fratello*, his or her Brother; *ſua ſorella*, his or her Siſter.

Second OBSERVATION.

Sometimes theſe plural Pronouns, *i miei*, *i tuoi*, *i ſuoi*, *i noſtri*, *i voſtri*, ſignify one's Friends and Relations, or the People of one's Party;

Party; ex. *è andato verſo i ſuoi, e non l'hanno conoſciuto*, he went to his own, and they knew him not.

Third OBSERVATION.

Sometimes theſe ſingular Pronouns, *il mio*, *il tuo*, *il ſuo*, *il noſtro*, *il voſtro*, *il loro*, ſignifie one's own Money or Eſtate; ex. *ho ſpeſo cento ſcudi del mio*, I ſpent a hundred Crowns of my own; *non ſpende niente del ſuo*, he ſpends none of his own Money.

As for the Regimen of theſe Pronouns, I ſpoke of them at large in the fourth Obſervation of the Chapter of Articles.

Of Pronouns Demonſtrative.

Queſto and *quello* are proper, either for Perſons or Things, and are declined like Adjectives, with the Article, *di*, *a*, *da*; as, *queſt' uomo*, this Man; *queſta donna*, this Woman; *quello ſcolare*, that Scholar; *quella ſignora*, that Lady.

Queſto, ſhews the Perſon or Thing that is near us; *quel* or *quello*, ſhews a Perſon or Thing that is remote.

Queſti and *quegli* or *quelli*, are often uſed alone, inſtead of *queſt' uomo*; as, *queſti a cavallo*, *quegli a piedi*, the one on Horſeback, the other a Foot.

Before *mane* or *mattina*, *ſera* or *notte*, we ſay, *ſta*, inſtead of *queſta*; as, *ſtamane*, or *ſtamatti-*

mattina, this Morning; *ſta ſera*, or *ſta notte*, this Night.

Coſtui, he, or this Man, *coſtei*, she, or this Woman, require the Article, *di*, *a*, *da*; and in the Plural, make *coſtoro*: They are uſed only for Perſons.

Coteſti, as has been ſaid of *queſti* and *quegli*, is ſometimes uſed for *coteſto*; as, *coteſti ancor vive*, he is ſtill living.

Colui, he, or that Man; *colei*, she, or that Woman, are declined like *coſtui*, and in the Plural, make *coloro*; but they are proper only to Perſons.

Ciò, this or that, ſerves for *queſto* and *quello*: It is declined with the Article, *di*, *a*, *da*; but it is ſaid only of Things; as, *noi parleremo di ciò à bell' agio*, we will talk of that at Leiſure; *queſto qui*, *queſta qui*, *quello lì*, *quella lì*, this here, that there, are declined like *queſto* and *quello*.

Queſto uſed without a Subſtantive, is neuter, and ſignifies this or that; as, *ſe fate queſto*, *ſarete perduto*, if you do that, you will be undone.

Of Pronouns Relative.

Firſt OBSERVATION.

The relative *che* has two Significations, of the Perſon, and of the Thing; when it ſignifies the Perſon, or any Sort of Being, it cannot be

be uſed but in the nominative and accuſative Singular and Plural; and in the other Caſes, we uſe, *cui*, with or without the Articles, *di*, *a*, *da*; as, *un uomo che canta bene*, a Man that ſings well; *la donna che voi amate*, the Woman you love; *un cavallo che galoppa bene*, a Horſe that gallops well; *un uomo il cui merito*, or *il di cui merito è ben conoſciuto*, a Man whoſe Merit is well known; *à cui riſpoſe*, to whom he anſwered.

When *che* is relative to a Thing, it is common to all Genders, Numbers and Caſes; as, *il libro che vi ho mandato*, the Book I ſent you; *i libri che ſono ſtampati*, the Books that are printed.

Seventh OBSERVATION.

Che, with the Articles, *il*, *del*, *al*, *dal*, before it, is relative neither to a Perſon nor to a Thing, but to what has been ſaid before; as, *ſe andaſse alla guerra correrebbe riſchio d' eſſer ammazzato, il che mi diſpiacerebbe molto*, if he went for a Soldier, he would run a riſque to be killed, for which I should be very ſorry.

Third OBSERVATION.

Quale, when it is taken relatively, requires the Articles, *il*, *del*, *al*, *dal*, *la*, *della*, *alla*, *dalla*, and their Plural, and is uſed inſtead of *che*; as, *l' uomo il quale teme Iddio, non teme la morte*, the Man who fears God, is not afraid of Death.

Fourth

Fourth OBSERVATION.

Theſe relative Particles, *dove*, *donde*, *vi*, *ne*, are uſed in the following manner.

Dove, and *donde*, relate to a Place; ex. *il paeſe dove ſono nato*, the Country where I was born; *il luogo donde vengo*, the Place from whence I come.

Vi, relates to a Place or Thing; *ſete ſtato alla chieſa? vi ſono ſtato*, have you been at Church? yes, I have been there; *la morte è inevitabile, e perciò dobbiamo penſarvi*, or *penſarci*, Death is inevitable, and therefore we ought to think of it.

Ne, relates to a Thing or Place; ex. *quando ho del vino, ne bevo*, when I have Wine, I drink it; *è un bel cavallo, ma ne ho veduto uno più bello*, that's a fine Horſe, but I have ſeen a finer; *voi mi avete ſervito, e vene ringrazio*, you have obliged me, and I thank you for it; *volete andare in città? ne vengo*, will you go into the City? I come from thence.

Fifth OBSERVATION.

Che is repeated in *Italian*, as well as other Pronouns; ex. *è un uomo che canta, che balla, e che ſuona di molti ſtromenti*, it is a Man that ſings, dances, and plays upon ſeveral Inſtruments.

Chi ſometimes is uſed diſtributively; as, *chi dice una coſa, chi un'altra*, ſome ſay one Thing, ſome another.

Of Pronouns Interrogative.

Firſt OBSERVATION.

Of the Interrogative Pronouns, *chi*, *che* are always abſolute, but *quale* is generally conjunctive.

Second OBSERVATION.

Quale is ſaid both of Perſons and Things; *chi*, of Perſons; *che*, of Things and Perſons. ex. *quale di queſte dame vi piace più?* which of theſe Ladies do you like beſt? *quale di queſti fiori volete?* which of theſe Flowers will you have? *Chi ſete voi?* who are you? *chi ha fatto queſto?* who has done this? *di che ſi parla?* what do they ſay Abroad? *che uomo è quello?* what Man is that?

Of Numeral Pronouns.

Numeral Pronouns are, *ciaſcuno*, *ciaſcheduno*, *ognuno*, *neſſuno*, *niuno*, *veruno*, *nullo*, *ogni*, *tutto*, *molti*, *poco*, *alcuno*.

Ciaſcuno, or *ciaſcheduno*, are affirmative Pronouns, that have no Plural; ex. *ciaſcheduno ſa*, every Body knows; *ciaſcheduna di loro aveva una corona in teſta*, they had every one of them a Crown upon their Heads.

Neſſuno, *Niuno*, or *veruno*, have no Plural, and ſignify no Body, or any Body; ex. *neſſuno è venuto*, no Body is come; *non ho veduto*

niſ-

niſſuno di loro I ſaw none of them; *vi è neſſuno che mi voglia?* is there any Body that wants me?

Ogni is affirmative, and has no Plural; ex. *ogni paeſe ha la ſua uſanza*, every Conuntry has its Cuſtom; *in ogni coſa le ſemine s' appigliano al peggio*, Women betake themſelves to the worſt in every thing

Ogni, with *coſa*, doth ſignifie every; ex. *il tempo conſuma ogni coſa*, Time deſtroys every thing.

Poco is affirmative, and declinable; ex. *pochi ſono quelli che ſieguono la virtù*, few are thoſe that follow Virtue.

Molti is affirmative of the plural Number; ex. *molti ſono chiamati, ma pochi eletti*, many are called, but few are choſen; *vi ſono molte belle donne in Inghiltera*, there are many fine Women in *England*.

Alcuno is affirmative and declinable; *ho alcune coſe a dirvi*, I have ſome things to tell you.

We uſe the Pronoun *alcuno* after a Verb that is preceeded by a Negative; ex. *non vi è alcuna che ſia più bella di voi*, there is no body handſomer than you.

Of Proncuns Indefinite.

Pronouns Indefinite are, *l' uno, l' altro, qualcheduuo, alcuno, chiunque, qualunque, chiche, qualche, certo, ſteſſo, tale, chi;* ex. *l' uno e l' altro hanno ragione*, both, are in the right; *gli*

uni ſono di queſta opinione, gli altri di quella, ſome are of this Opinion, others of that; *altro è parlar di morte, altro è morire*, to ſpeak of Death is one thing, and to die another.

We ſay, *da altro*, to ſignify One's Aptneſs in doing ſomething; ex. *tu non ſei da altro, che da lavare le ſcudelle*, you are good for nothing elſe, but to wash Dishes.

Chiunque has no Plural, and is only ſaid of Perſons; ex. *chiunque teme Iddio, ama il ſuo proſſimo*, whoſoever fears God, loves his Neighbour.

Qualunque has no Plural, and is ſaid only of Things; as, *farò qualunque coſa mi comandiate*, I will do any thing you command me.

Chiche, has no Plural, and is ſaid only of Perſons; ex. *chiche tel' abbia detto, no'l nego*, whoever has told you of it, I do not deny it.

Qualche, has no Plural, and is ſaid both of Perſons and Things; ex. *qualche tu ſie, od ombra od uomo certo*, whoever you are, either a Ghoſt, or a real Man; *datemi qualche coſa*, give me ſomething; *ho qualche dauari*, I have ſome Money.

Steſſo, this Pronoun is often joined with perſonal Pronouns; ex. *anderò da me ſteſſo*, I will go by my ſelf. *io ſteſſo vel ho detto*, I told you that my ſelf. It is alſo joined with Subſtantives; ex. *il Re ſteſſo*, the King himſelf.

Tale, is declinable, and is ſaid both of Perſons and

and Things; and makes *tali* in the Plural, both for Maſculine and Feminine; ex. *un tale meſ ha detto*, ſuch a one told me that; *tal marito, tal moglie*, like Husband, like Wife; *non poſſo ſoffrire una tal coſa*, I cannot endure ſuch a Thing.

Tale is ſometimes an Adjective of Similitude, betwen two or more Things, but in this Senſe it is a Pronoun relative; and *quale* anſwers to it; ex. *e d' eſſer tal per ſuo valor ſi vanta, qual tu per tua viltà la fingi ed orni*, and she preſumes, that she is really deſerving of thoſe Praiſes, which you give her only through your Submiſſion.

CHAP. XII.

Of Verbs.

THere are three Thing to be conſidered in Verbs.

Firſt, The Uſe of Moods. *Secondly*, The Uſe of Tenſes. And, *Thirdly*, The Regimen, or Caſe governed.

Of the Uſe of Moods.

I have treated before of the Nature, and conſequently of the Uſe of the four Moods; but becauſe of their Particles, ſome of which govern the Indicative, others the Conjunctive, and others again the Infinitive, it will not be improper to ſet them down here.

Conjunctions that govern the Indicative.

Subito che, as ſoon as.
Dopo che, after that.
Poiche, *Atteſo che*, } ſince, ſeeing that.
Tanto che, *Mentre che*, } as long as, whilſt.
Di maniera che, *Talmente che*, *Si ben che*, } ſo that, inſomuch that.
Forſe che, perhaps.
Eccetto che, *Se non che*, } except that, unleſs, but, ſave that.
Perchè, *A cauſa che*, } becauſe.
Secondo che, according as.
Oltre che, beſides that.
Tanto che, as long as.
Dopo che, ſince.

Conjunctions that govern the Conjunctive Mood.

Affinchè, *Acciocchè*, } that.
Avanti che, *Prima che*, } before that.
A meno che, except, unleſs.
Benchè, *Ancorchè*, } though, or although.
Caſo che, in caſe that.

Con

Con patto che,
A condizion che,
Purchè, } upon condition that, provided that.

Senza che, without.

Fino a tanto che, till.

Per tema che, for fear, leſt.

Dato che,
Suppoſto che, } ſuppoſe, or grant that.

And perhaps ſome few more.

A Verb that is followed by the Particle *che*, governs the Indicative or Conjunctive Mood; and becauſe it ſuffices to know the Verbs that govern either of theſe two Moods, I ſhall only mention thoſe that govern the Conjunctive, as being leſs in Number than the reſt.

Beſides the Conjunctions already mentioned, we uſe the conjunctive Mood,

Firſt, After the following Verbs, *volere*, *deſiderare*, *pretendere*, *comandare*, *pregare*, *ſupplicare*, *richiedere*, *comportare*, *permettere*, *difendere*, *proibire*, *perſuadere*, *diſſuadere*, *eſortare*, *temere*, *dubbitare*, *ſupporre*, *impedire*, *aſpettare*, *dire*, *fare*. ex.

Voglio che voi andiate, I will have you go; *deſidererei che veniſſe*, I wish he would come, *&c.*

Note, That theſe Verbs *comandare*, *ordinare*, *pregare*, *permettere*, *difendere*, *proibire*, *ſupplicare*, *impedire*, require the Infinitive of the following Verb with the Particle *di*, when they govern a Noun or Pronoun; ex. *li ho comandato di dirvi*,

I have commanded him to tell you. But when the ſame are uſed in an indefinite Senſe, and govern neither Noun nor Pronoun, they require a Conjunctive after them; ex. *il Rè ordinò, che l' eſercito s' attendaſſe intorno alle mura*, the King gave Orders for the Army to encamp about the Walls.

Secondly, Moſt Impersonal Verbs require a Conjunctive after them; *biſogna che voi partiate domani*, you muſt go away to Morrow.

Thirdly, We generally uſe the Conjunctive Mood after a Verb that has the Particle *ſe*, or the Negative *non* before it; *ſe voi credete, che ſia venuto*, if you think that he is come; *non credo che ſia ancora arrivato*, I believe he is not come yet.

Note, That when the Particle *ſe* goes before the Imperfect Tenſe of the Indicative in *English*, we uſe the ſecond Imperfect of the Conjunctive, if we ſpeak of the Time to come, it being in this Senſe a Particle conditional; as, *s' io foſſi ricco, averei molti amici*, if I was rich, I ſhould have many Friends; *ſe foſſe liberale, ſarebbe amato da tutti*, if he was liberal, he would be beloved by every Body: But if we ſpeak of the Time paſt, we uſe the Imperfect Tenſe of the Indicative; ex. *Se* Giorgio *Primo era temuto da ſuoi vicini*, Giorgio *Secondo è temuto e amato*, if *George* the Firſt was feared by his Neighbours, *George* the Second is feared and beloved.

Note

Note alſo, That in *English* we uſe the Preſent Tenſe with the Particle *if*, when we ſpeak of the Time to come; but in *Italian* we uſe the Future, ex. *verrò domani ſe averò tempo*, I will come to Morrow, if I have Time.

Fourthly, After *quale*, without asking the Queſtion; ex. *non ſapendo qual foſſe la ſtagione propria da ſeminare*, not knowing the proper Seaſon for Sowing; *non vedo qual ſia l' intento ſuo*, I do not ſee what his Deſign is: But if by *quale*, we ask a Queſtion, the Verb muſt be of the Indicative Mood; *quale di queſti fiori volete?* which of theſe Flowers will you have?

Fifthly, After the Superlative Definite; as, *la più bella donna che conoſca*, the fineſt Woman I know.

Sixthly, After the relative *che*, when the Verb expreſſes a Condition in a future Senſe; as, *voglio una moglie che ſia bella e ricca*, I will have a Wife handſome and rich.

Of the Infinitive.

The Infinitive, as we ſaid before, has an Indefinite Signification, and expreſſes the Action without any Circumſtance either of Time or Perſon. There are of Prepoſitions which are often joined with the Infinitive, *viz. di*, *a*, *da*, *per*, by means of which we expreſs the *Gerunds* and *Supines* of the *Latins*, which are generally rendered into *English* by the Particle *to*; ex.

Vi

Vi prego di mandarmi, I deſire you to ſend me; *ho qualche coſa a ſcrivere*, I have ſomething to write; *queſte non ſon coſe da fare*, ſuch Things are not to be done; *vengo per farvi ſapere, che*, I come to let you know, that.

Of the Uſe of the Particle Di *before the Infinitive.*

The Prepoſition *di* is uſed before the Infinitive,

Firſt, After a Noun Subſtantive, in which Caſe it anſwers to the Gerund in *di*, in the *Latin*; ex. *l'Arte di parlare*, the Art of Speaking; *non ho il tempo di leggere*, I have not the Time to read.

Secondly, After an Adjective that governs a Genitive Caſe; ſuch as, *contento*, *riſoluto*, &c. ex. *ſono contento di morire*, I am contented to die; *ſono riſoluto di partire*, I am reſolved to go.

Thirdly, After the Verbs, *ſperare*, *comandare*, *permettere*, *deſiderare*, *pregare*, *promettere*, *impedire*, *perſuadere*, *diſſuadere*, *conſigliare*, *avertire*, *temere*, *&c.* ex. *ſpero di vedervi domani*, I hope to ſee you to Morrow; *vi prego di conſiderare*, I deſire you to conſider, *&c.*

Of the Uſe of the Particle a *before the Infinitive.*

The Prepoſition *a* is uſed before the Infinitive,

Firſt, After the Verbs *avere*, and *eſſere*, in the following and like Expreſſions; ex. *ho una lettera a ſcrivere*, I have a Letter to write; *v'è pericolo à caminar la notte*, it is dangerous to walk in the Night.

Se-

Secondly, After Adjectives that govern the Dative Caſe; ſuch as, *pronto*, *dedito*, *accoſtumato*, *atto*, *&c.* ex. *ſono pronto à partire*, I am ready to go; *egli è dedito a giuocare*, he is given to play, *&c.*

Thirdly, After ſome Verbs; ſuch as *cominciare*, *conſigliare*, *eſortare*, *prepararſi*, *diſporſi*, *apparecchiarſi*, *riſolverſi*, *metterſi*, *occuparſi*, *&c.* *io comincio ad intendere l' Italiano*, I begin to underſtand *Italian*, &c.

Note, That if the Verb begins by a Vowel, we ſay, *ad*; ex. *v' eſorto ad aver pazienza*, I adviſe you to have Patience.

Note alſo, That there are ſeveral Verbs before which we may uſe the Particle, *di* or *a*, almoſt indifferently; in which caſe we ought to chuſe that which ſounds beſt to the Ear; ſuch as, *conſigliare*, *eſortare*, *perſuadere*, *sforzare*, *mancare*, *provare*, and ſome others.

Of the Uſe of the Particle da *before the Infinitive.*

The Prepoſition *da* is uſed before the Infinitive, when the Infinitive Active is put inſtead of the Paſſive; ex. *la guerra è da temere*, War is to be feared; *queſte non ſono coſe da fare*, ſuch Things ought not to be done.

Of the Uſe of the Prepoſition per *before the Infinitive.*

The Prepoſition *per*, is uſed before the Infinitive.

Firſt,

Firſt, To expreſs the End, Deſign, or Cauſe of an Action; ex. *vengo per farvi ſapere*, I come to acquaint you; *è ſtato impiccato per aver ammazzato un uomo*, he was hanged for killing a Man.

There are ſix Prepoſitions, *viz. ſenza*, *doʃ*, *per*, *con*, *col*, *in*, which are ſometimes uſed before the Infinitive; ex.

Non ſi può vivere ſenza mangiare, one cannot live without eating; *dopo aver preſo congedo da ſuoi amici*, *partì per* Francia, after having taken Leave of his Friends, he went to *France*; *perduto è il tempo*, *che in amar non ſi ſpende*, the Time that is not ſpent in loving, is loſt; *collo ſtudiare s'impara*, by Study one learns.

Note, That the Infinitive is uſed for the Imperative, in forbidding ſomething; as, *non mi tacer*, *qual è'l paſtor tra noi*, *&c.* do not conceal from me, who is the Shepherd among us, *&c.*

Note alſo, That we uſe the Infinitive like a Subſtantive, with the Article, *il*, *del*, *al*, *dal*: ex. *il mangiar ſoverchio nuoce alla ſalute*, too much Eating impares our Health; *il parlar di ſoverchio*, *è ſegno di pazzia*, much Talk is a Sign of Folly.

Of the Uſe of Tenſes.

Although what I have ſaid already, about the Uſe of Tenſes in the Chapter of Analogy, may in ſome Meaſure be ſufficient; yet it will not be amiſs to make here the following Obſervations.

1. The

1. The Preſent of the Indicative Mood is ſometimes uſed inſtead of the Future; ex. *domani è feſta*, to Morrow is a Holiday, *&c.*

2. The Imperfect is uſed to ſhew the Continuation of an Action, which was done, either ſome time ago, or in the Time one ſpeaks of; as, *per queſta mene venivo a Londra*, for this I was coming to *London; ſedeva appreſſo di me*, he was ſitting by me.

Sometimes it implies Frequency, Manner or Cuſtom; as, *sì che là dove avean gli augelli il nido notaro i peſci;* ſo that where Birds were uſed to build their Neſts, now Fishes ſwam; *il famigliare, che mal volontieri l' uccidea*, the Servant, who had no Mind to kill him.

We uſe the ſame time, when a Action meets with an Impediment; *avevo diſſegno d' andare in Francia, ma i miei affari non melo permettono*, I had a Deſign to go to *France*, but my Buſineſs does not permit me.

3. The perfect Definite expreſſes the preciſe and determinate Time, when the Action was done; ex. *poichè a morte mi ſentii ferito*, after I found my ſelf mortally wounded. It is alſo called the Hiſtorical Tenſe, becauſe it is much uſed by the Hiſtorians, to relate Things paſt; as, *avvenne, che il Re di Francia morì, ed in ſuo luogo fu coronato il figliuolo*, it hapned that the King of *France* died, and his Son was crowned in his Stead.

4. The

4. The Preterperfect expreſſes an Action perfectly paſt, without determining any preciſe Time; as, *io ho inteſo ciò che di me ragionato avete*, I have overheard all that is ſaid concerning me; *mio Padre morì in Italia*, my Father died in *Italy*.

Sometimes it expreſſes an Action done the ſame Day that we ſpeak of it; as, *l' ho veduto ſtamattina*, I ſaw him this Morning.

5. The firſt Pluperfect expreſſes an Action that was perfectly paſt, before another, which is ſpoken of, was begun, but without determining any certain and preciſe Time; as, *l' avevo ben veduto, ma non lo conoſcevo*, I had ſeen him, but I did not know him.

6. The ſecond Pluperfect expreſſes an Action perfectly paſt, before another which is ſpoken of was begun, and beſides the Time is certain and determined; as, *veduto che l' ebbi ſubito il conobbi*, I knew him as ſoon as I ſaw him; *non ſi toſto ruſtico Paſtorel l' ebbe guatata, che i primi ſguardi non ſoſtenne*, no ſooner had a ruſtick Swain glanced his Eyes upon her, but he ſurrendered at the firſt Sight.

Of the Regimen of Verbs.

There are two Things to be conſidered about the Regimen of Verbs, *viz.* their Nominative, and the Caſe governed.

Of

Of the Nominative of Verbs.

Firſt RULE.

A Verb Perſonal in the Indicative or Conjunctive Mood requires before, or after it, a Nominative, either expreſſed or underſtood, that agrees with it in Number and Perſon; ex. *la giuſtizia contiene tutte le altre virtù*, Juſtice comprehends all other Virtues; *io non amo che voi*, I love none but you.

Note, That all Nouns, both ſingular and plural, are of the third Perſon, except theſe Pronouns Perſonal, *io*, *tu*, *noi*, *voi*, which are of the firſt and ſecond Perſon; and thoſe Nouns which are uſed in the ſame Senſe as the Vocative of the *Latins*, eſpecially when joined with the ſecond Perſons of the Imperative Mood, are of the ſecond Perſon: ex. *Io leggo Virgilio*, I read *Virgil; noi ſtudiamo la Filoſofia*, we ſtudy Philoſophy; *voi ſete felice*, you are happy; *amico avete torto*, Friend you are in the wrong; *Signori badate a voi*, Gentlemen look to your ſelves.

Second RULE.

The firſt Perſon is counted better than the ſecond, and the ſecond better than the third; therefore, when two or more Perſons go before a Verb, the Verb always agrees with the beſt Perſon; as, *lui ed io abbiamo pranſato inſieme*, he and I have dined together; *voi ed ella ſarete ben venuti*, you and she shall be welcome.

Note

Note by the by, that though the firſt Perſon be better than the other two (according to Grammatical Notions) yet when we ſpeak or write, we ought never to name our ſelves firſt, as the *Greeks* and *Latins* do; as for Example, we muſt not ſay, *io e voi;* but *voi ed io*, you and I.

Third RULE.

The Subſtantive Verb *Eſſere*, and ſome Neuter Verbs, have often a Nominative before, and another after; ex. *io ſono felice*, I am happy.

Fourth RULE.

Two or more Subſtantives of the Singular Number, being joined by a Conjunction, require a Verb in the Plural. See *Chap.* 11. about the Conſtruction of Subſtantives.

Fifth RULE.

When two or more Nominatives Singular are ſeparated by the disjunctive Particle *o*, the Verb is generally put in the Singular, and very ſeldom in the Plural; as, *o l' avarizia, o la prodigalità regna ne' ricchi*, either Covetouſneſs or Prodigality reigns among the Rich; *forſe che l' amor de' figliuoli, la ſua riputazione, o'l timor di Dio lo faranno divenir ſavio*; perhaps, either the Love of his Children, his Reputation or the Fear of God will make him wiſe.

Sixth

Sixth RULE.

Two or more Nouns ſingular, being joined by the Particle *ne*, are conſtrued with a Verb, either ſingular or plural; as, *nè il pericolo della vita, nè il timor di Dio ebbero forza a ſmuovrlo dalla ſua riſoluzione*, neither the Danger of his Life, nor the Fear of God, could prevail to make him alter his Reſolution.

Seventh RULE.

When there are ſeveral Nominatives, the laſt of which is in the ſingular Number, and ſeparated from the reſt by the Particle *ma*, the Verb ought to be in the ſingular Number; ex. *Non ſolamente i ſuoi onori, e le ſue ricchezze, ma anche la ſua riputazione ſvanì*, not only his Honours and Riches, but his Reputation alſo vanished away.

Eighth RULE.

After collective Words; ſuch as, *una quantità, un modo, la maggior parte*, &c. the Verb agrees in Number with the Subſtantive that comes after the Collective; ex. *una quantità di gente morì*, a great many People died; *una quantità di ſoldati entrarono nella città*, a great many Soldiers entered the Town; *la maggior parte degli uomini ſono cattivi*, the Generality of Men are wicked.

Of the Caſe governed by Verbs.

Firſt RULE.

All active Verbs govern an Accuſative Caſe, (which in Nouns and Participles is the ſame as the Nominative:) ex. *amare la virtù*, to love Virtue; *caſtigare i cattivi*, to punish the Wicked.

Second RULE.

Paſſive Verbs do generally govern the Ablative Caſe; ex. *eſſere amato da tutti*, to be beloved by every body.

Third RULE.

Verbs that ſignify to give, or attribute, govern the Accuſative of the Thing, and the Dative of the Perſon; as, *dar la gloria a Dio*, to give the Praiſe to God.

Fourth RULE.

Moſt neuter Verbs are abſolute, and govern no Cafe, unleſs it be by means of ſome Prepoſition; ex. *vivere oneſtamente*, to live honeſtly; *parlare al Re*, to ſpeak to the King.

Fifth RULE.

Moſt Verbs of Motion govern the Dative Caſe of the Thing towards which the Action tends, and the Ablative or Gentive of the Place or Perſon from which the Motion comes; as, *andare a Pa-*

a Parigi, to go to *Paris*; *venire dalla campagna*, to come from the Country; *partimmo di Livorno*, we came from *Leghorn*.

Note, That Verbs that ſignify to come, to return, to go out, *&c.* require the Genitive of Nouns which are declined with the Article, *di*, *a*, *da*; as, *vengo di Londra*, I come from London: but they have the Ablative of Nouns, which are declined with the Article *il*, *del*, *al*, *del*; ex. *vengo dalla città*, I come from the City, yet ſometimes the Genitive is uſed; ex. *la Gianetta uſcì della camera*, *Gianetta* went out of the Room. *Bocc.*

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Conſtruction of Participles.

PArticiples, as we ſaid before, are either Active or Paſſive, both which are conſtrued as follows.

Conſtruction of Active Particles.

Firſt RULE.

The Participle Active has two Terminations, *viz.* in *ando*, as *amando*, and in *endo*, as *credendo*, *dormendo*.

Second RULE.

All Participles Active are indeclinable, or are of all Numb rs, Genders and Perſons, as long as they have the Force and Signification of the Verb, from whence they are derived; ex, *Il Re eſſendo aſſiſo ſul trono*, the King ſitting on his Throne; *la Regina eſſendo indiſpoſta*, the Queen being indiſpoſed.

Third RULE.

The Nominative is better placed after the Participle Active, than before; ex *avendo il Re dato ordine*, the King having ordered.

Conſtruction of Participles Paſſive.

Firſt RULE.

The Participle Paſſive, uſed in a Paſſive Signification, is declinable, and varies according to the Difference of Genders and Numbers; ex. *io ſono amato* I am loved; *ella è ſtimata*, she is eſteemed; *noi ſiamo lodati*, we are praiſed.

Note, That when the Pronoun *voi* is put for the ſingular *tu*, the Participle that follows it ought to be in the ſingular; *voi ſete amato* or *amata*, you are loved.

Se-

Second RULE.

The ſame Participle is alſo declined in Neuter Verbs; ex. *egli è venuto*, *andato*, *&c.* he is come gone, &c. *ella è venuta*, *andata*, &c. she is come, gone, *&c.*

Third RULE.

The Participle Paſſive being uſed in the Active Signification, with the Auxiliary Verb *avere*, may be declinable or indeclinable; ex. *Io ho ſperato la pace*, and *Io ho ſperata la pace*, I have hoped for Peace; *ho ricevuto le voſtre lettere*, and *ho ricevute le voſtre lettere*, I have received your Letters.

Fourth RULE.

When the Pronoun in the Accuſative Caſe, ſuch as, *che*, *lo*, *la*, *gli*, *le*, goes before the Participle, then the latter is declined, and agrees with the Pronoun, to which it relates both in Gender and Number; as, *il cappello che ho comprato*, the Hat I, or which I bought; *la lettera ch' ho ſcritta*, the Letter I wrote; *i libri ch' ho comprati*, the Books I bought; *l' ho veduto*, I have ſeen him; *l' ho veduta*, I have ſeen her.

According to this Rule, the Participle is declined in reciprocal and reflected Verbs; as, *egli s' è ammazzato*, he has killed himſelf; *ella s' è ammazzata*, she has killed her ſelf.

The

The Participle is indeclinable, when there follows immediately a Verb in the Infinitive; as, *Il Papa ha fatto ſcommunicare gli eretici*, the Pope has excommunicated the Hereticks; *mia ſorella ha creduto partire*, my Siſter thought to go.

Sixth RULE.

The Participles Active, *avendo*, and *eſſendo*, are ſometimes ſuppreſſed before Participles Paſſive; ex. *il quale inteſo il diſegno*, inſtead of *avendo inteſo*, who having known the Deſign; *ammalatoſi il Re*, inſtead of *eſſendoſi ammalato*, the King being taken ill.

Note, That although we ſuppreſs the Participles *avendo*, *eſſendo*, we never ſuppreſs the Pronouns Conjunctive, which follow them, but they muſt be placed after the Participles Paſſive; ex. *avendo veduto*, we ſay, *vedutolo*, having ſeen him; *eſſendoſene accorto*, we ſay, *accortoſene*, he perceiving it.

Seventh RULE.

Inſtead of the Participles *avendo*, and *eſſendo*, we uſe ſometimes the Perfect Definite, and the Future of the Indicative Mood, with the Particle *che* before; ex. *finito ch' ebbe di ſcrivere*, having done writing; *finita che fu la predica*, the Sermon being done; *cominciata che ſarà la guerra*, as ſoon as the War is begun; *pranſato che averò*, after I have dined.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Uſe of Prepoſitions.

THE Caſe governed by Prepoſitions has been abundantly ſpoken of in the Analogy; and therefore I ſhall only make here ſome Obſervations upon the Uſe of ſome Prepoſitions.

Firſt OBSERVATION.

The Prepoſition *verſo* relates to a Place, to a Perſon, and to Time, generally it governs the Accuſative, and ſometimes the Genitive; as, *verſo Roma*, towards *Rome*: *verſo me*, or *di me*, towards me; *verſo la Sera*, towards the Evening.

Inverſo relates only to a Perſon; *inverſo me*, towards me.

Second OBSERVATION.

The Prepoſitions *in* and *nel*, although they ſignifiy the ſame Thing, yet are not indifferently uſed; *In* is uſed before Verbs of Motion or Reſt; ex. *Io vo in Roma*, I go to *Rome*; *io ſono in Londra*, I am at *London*. It is uſed alſo before Nouns that have no Article; ex. *è ſtato famoſo in Pace e in guerra*, he has been famous in Peace and War; *egli è in pericolo*, he is in Danger:

But

But if proper Names have an Article, or are followed by an Article, we uſe the Prepoſitions, *nel*, *nello*, *nella*, *ne'*, *nelle*, *negli*, according to the Gender and Number of the Subſtantive; as, *nel giardino*, in the Garden; *nella chieſa*, in the Church; *nello ſtudio*, in the Study; *nell' Italia*, in *Italy*, &c.

When we ſpeak of a Space of Time, we uſe the Prepoſition *in*, to expreſs the whole Time one hath been about doing any Thing; as, *ha compoſto la ſua Iſtoria in tre anni*, he compoſed his Hiſtory in three Years. We alſo uſe *in*, to ſignify that the Thing in Queſtion will not be done till after a certain Time; as, *verrà in otto giorni*, he will come in eight Days.

CORRECTIONS.

Pag. 17. line 5. for hash, read *hath*. 19. 23. reſult *reſults*. 28. 13. ſe aliquanti *ſe alquanti*. 40. 26. Vowel *Vowels*. 47. 14. there is *there are*. 48. 6. make *makes*. 91 7. ſigular *ſingular*. ib. 27. oughet *ought*. 68. 5. *or* or. 97 5. queſto *quello*. 114. 11. he had *thou hads't*. 124. 14. In amo *Io amo*. 136. 15. tu aveſse *tu aveſſi*. 138. 17. ſinneſt *ſinneth*. 139. 16. he *we* 140. 7. shalt *shall*. 151. 25. give *giveſt*. 182. 27. whoever *however*. 198. 17. I opened *I covered*. ibid. 18. open *cover*. 211. 5. *or* or. 214. 2. Pronoun *Pronouns*. 262. 10. Highneſs *Highneſſes*. 289. 6. ſmuovrlo *ſmuoverlo*.